

PART I

JULIUS CAESAR  
AND  
ROMAN IMPERIALISM IN GAUL



## 1. CAESAR

Caesar was born in 102 B. C., in the last age of the Roman Republic which he was himself destined to bring to an end.

During the period of Caesar's life the Romans were divided into two violently opposed political groups. The senatorial party,<sup>1</sup> aristocratic and conservative, sought to maintain its position of privilege and to prevent reforms which would liberalize Roman democratic institutions and relieve the economic distress of the lower classes. On the other side was a diverse group, the democratic or popular party, made up of debtors, the poor, ambitious political adventurers, and sincere reformers.

The equestrian order, the knights,<sup>2</sup> formed a third group of middle-class businessmen and bankers. For the most part they stood with the commoners against the nobility, but at times they were frightened by the extremes of popular demagogues or enticed by commercial concessions into an alliance with the aristocracy.

During Caesar's early political career the party struggles terminated in military dictatorships. Marius seized the government and purged it of aristocrats.<sup>3</sup> Sulla returned from a war in Asia Minor and restored the aristocracy in a new blood bath.<sup>4</sup> After

---

<sup>1</sup> The Senate was composed of ex-magistrates and other distinguished Romans.

<sup>2</sup> In the early days of Rome the army was a citizen militia in which those who could afford to equip themselves with horse and armor formed the cavalry (*equites*). Later the term *equites* was used for a class of society and had no military significance.

<sup>3</sup> "For five days there followed reign of terror which outran all precedent—parties of ruffianly freedmen patrolling the streets, killing ferociously at Marius' least nod, and hunting down the victims of his will; mutilated corpses littering the roadway; more heads set to decorate the Rostra; properties and houses confiscated wholesale and knocked down to the highest bidder."—Cyril E. Robinson, *A History of Rome*. New York, Crowell, p. 154.

<sup>4</sup> "Sulla had a long score to pay off against the defeated party for their ruthless massacre of his senatorial friends. It was not his habit to do anything by halves; and he set out to exterminate all equestrians and democrats who had

their rule had passed, the old party feuds and intrigues reappeared, though political life continued under the constant threat of a revolution or a military coup.

Caesar early entered upon a political career and rose steadily, despite the upheavals through which he lived. He allied himself with the popular party and strengthened his ties with it by marrying Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, then the leader of the democrats. In 82 B. C. Sulla swept into power and inaugurated his reign of terror. Cinna was murdered. Caesar was ordered to divorce Cornelia. This he refused to do and was consequently placed on the proscription list, but the intercession of friends saved him. He then left Rome and returned only after Sulla's death. He gained something of a reputation by prosecuting several dishonest officials. He then left for Rhodes, a famous intellectual center, to spend two years in study. An anecdote is related of his trip to Rhodes from which we may learn something of his character.

His ship was captured by pirates and Caesar was held for ransom. He disdainfully refused to send the first ransom note because it demanded a sum below what he thought his true worth. While waiting for the ransom (about \$50,000) he became a cheerful companion of the pirates, amusing them with his ready wit and telling them—what they considered the best joke of all—that he would return and crucify them. After his release he manned a fleet out of

---

taken sides against him. At first he proceeded by promiscuous slaughter. Then, on request, he drew up lists of proscribed persons whose lives and properties were thereby forfeit and their murderer entitled to a handsome reward. 'Those,' he remarked with a chuckle, 'are all I can remember at present.' No one could feel safe. His favourites continued to insert on the lists the names of men whose property they coveted. 'My Alban villa pursues me,' cried one blameless citizen on reading his name. Fortunes changed hands with bewildering rapidity; and we hear of a sergeant acquiring an estate worth a hundred thousand pounds. The worst elements of society profited at the expense of the best, and the foulest passions of revenge were aroused. One of Marius' sons was flogged through the streets and then put to death by torture. Altogether 50 democrat senators, 1,600 knights, and 2,000 other persons lost their lives. The experiences of the Terror left an indelible imprint on the memories of every class at Rome."—Cyril E. Robinson, *A History of Rome*. New York, Crowell, pp. 156-157.

Miletus, pursued and captured the pirates, recovered his money and—true to his promise—crucified them. One touch was considered characteristic of Caesar. He allowed them to be strangled before crucifixion in order to reduce their suffering.

At twenty-seven, Caesar was elected pontiff and military tribune at Rome;<sup>1</sup> at thirty-one he was quaestor;<sup>2</sup> at thirty-four aedile;<sup>3</sup> at thirty-six pontifex maximus<sup>4</sup> (a lifetime office); and at thirty-seven praetor.

During these years Caesar had lavishly expended enormous sums to gain the popular favor. Under his direction the public games reached a new magnificence.<sup>5</sup> He was open-handed and open-hearted—generous by nature indeed, but also out of political shrewdness. It is said that he ran his debts above those of any other man in Rome—at a time when indebtedness was an almost universal passion.

At thirty-nine he went to Spain and for the first time in his life was in command of an army. His military genius at once appeared, but, of more importance to him at the moment, his administration netted him a huge sum of money.

It is said that while at Gades in Spain he gazed at a statue of Alexander the Great and regretted that, while Alexander had conquered a world and was dead at thirty, he, Caesar, at thirty-nine, had as yet accomplished nothing. Caesar, they said, was ambitious.

But when Caesar returned from Spain, he was as yet only a very popular politician. The military idol of the moment was Gnaeus Pompey, who had just returned from a war in the East. He had

---

<sup>1</sup> Before a Roman could become consul, he was required by law to hold certain offices in a definite order. This was the *cursus honorum* and was arranged thus: quaestor, curule aedile, praetor, consul. Only a praetor or consul was eligible for the governorship of a province. There were no salaries for these public offices, but as a governor a man could amass almost unlimited wealth.

<sup>2</sup> An official in charge of finances.

<sup>3</sup> The aedile was in charge of streets, public buildings, games, festivals, etc., at Rome.

<sup>4</sup> The pontifex maximus was head of a college of fifteen pontiffs and controlled the official Roman religion.

<sup>5</sup> At one time, as aedile, he exhibited 320 pairs of gladiators.

disbanded his army<sup>1</sup> and, despite his popularity, was unable to press certain measures through the Senate. Marcus Crassus—another outstanding figure—had enriched himself by buying confiscated properties at auction during the Sullan terror and was now the wealthiest man in Rome. Against him, too, the Senate had displayed opposition. Yet Pompey and Crassus were themselves enemies.

This gave Caesar his political opportunity. Though but shortly back from a command in Spain, he had no present military power; though now out of debt, he had no financial resources. For a further rise to power he needed both. Characteristically, he seized the diverse elements of the situation and turned them to his purpose. He reconciled Pompey and Crassus, and formed with them a secret coalition known as the First Triumvirate (Committee of Three). By united efforts each would gain his own political end. Caesar was to be made consul, and afterwards governor of the province in Gaul, of Cisalpine Gaul (the region extending from the Alps to the Po River), and of Illyricum.

The political power of this combination was irresistible. Caesar was elected one of the consuls for 59 B. C. and, despite the opposition of his colleague Bibulus, pushed through the measures desired by his associates. In 58 he received the governorship as had been planned.

Caesar recognized that his coalition with Pompey and Crassus could not be permanent. The old republic of Rome was disintegrating into anarchy, from which a dictator would inevitably emerge. When the moment came to end once and for all the democratic government of Rome, the leaders of Roman military and political life would each attempt to seize the power. When that moment came Caesar meant to be prepared to meet both Pompey and Crassus. Against the coming of that moment he had planned his governorship of the province. For he now had an opportunity, through plunder and spoils of war as well as graft and the collec-

---

<sup>1</sup> Men had feared that Pompey would, on his return, set up a military dictatorship as had Sulla. But Pompey resigned his command before entering Rome.

tion of taxes, to amass a vast fortune. Moreover, the governorship of a province carried with it the command of a Roman army, and he would have an opportunity too, if he could but manage it, to build up an efficient fighting machine devoted to him and loyal to his interests. Moreover, the Gauls who lived beyond the province boundary—turbulent, free, and warlike—were still a threat to Roman security. Could he control or, better, conquer the 'long-haired' Gauls beyond the pale of the province, he would gain an enormous prestige at home. He knew, of course, that his absence from Rome<sup>1</sup> would give his enemies in the senatorial party time and opportunity to work against him. Yet he planned to maintain his political position there through political agents and gang leaders, like the notorious Clodius.<sup>2</sup> Besides, since military operations were carried on only during the summer, he would, during the winter months, be able to return to northern Italy (Cisalpine Gaul), which was part of his jurisdiction, and from there observe and direct political strategy at Rome.

Backed by an army, with ample financial resources and political and military prestige, he would be able to return to Rome as the one man able to take over the supreme direction of affairs. But all this turned on his success in Gaul. If he failed, he would return, most likely, a beaten man and there might be no political future for Julius Caesar.

---

<sup>1</sup> A Roman could not set foot in the city while commander of the military forces.

<sup>2</sup> Clodius, a complete scoundrel, a master at organizing demonstrations and inciting riots, was killed in a political brawl in 52 B.C. He had been a ready tool of Caesar.

## 2. CAESAR AS A LEADER

In the course of history there have arisen a few men—Alexander, Caesar, Napoleon—who were able to command the lasting loyalty not only of their intimate friends but of great masses of men, of armies, or of nations. What were the qualities—magnetic personality, dynamic action, rapid decision—that set these men apart from their fellows and revealed them as fashioned by nature for leadership? It will be both interesting and profitable to observe, as we read our story, the qualities of high leadership in action. We will thereby understand human nature and human history better and be better prepared therefore to understand also the world of human beings in which we now live. As you read, ask yourself what our text reveals of the leadership of Caesar. Ask yourself what qualities you would expect in a leader and see whether the words and deeds of Caesar—whom the great scholar T. Rice Holmes, with some exaggeration perhaps, calls “the greatest man of action who ever lived”—reveal these qualities. To help you in your study of Caesar’s leadership and to give you some idea of what to look for in our story, we reproduce here a few observations of Hilaire Belloc :

“A general commander is concerned with three separate departments of military activity: strategy, tactics and organization. He is concerned with the leadership of armies before action, that is, with the bringing of them into action in a fashion best calculated to give them advantage when contact with the enemy shall have been taken. This is strategy.

“He is concerned with the manoeuvre of his men after contact has been established and when and after the action has been begun. This is tactics.

“He is concerned throughout—but especially in his strategical capacity, and during those preliminary stages of preparation which are hardly accounted strategical—with rendering his forces as

efficient as may be for their purpose. With that object he must be an organizer: he must put in their right order the various factors which make for efficiency of every kind—the provision of all necessaries, the avenues and rate of their delivery, the maintenance of health, the machinery for disembarassing the armed organization of waste, and of maintaining it continually and fully supplied.

“These three qualities of the organizer, the tactician, the strategist must, all of them, be leavened and raised to their highest power through a fourth factor present in each and all—the faculty of command.

“Now this term—the faculty of command—is one impossible of definition, though (of course) it is the essential of the whole. It includes so obvious a thing as a right judgment in the choice of subordinates, an instinctive judgment also between the right and the wrong moment for an order, a reprimand, a confidence; but its true potential, the inner thing which gives it all its value, is some quality in the man which communicates his energy to inferiors, causes it to flow throughout every unit of his command down to the individual private soldier, and brings forth in unison those apparently contradictory things, responsibility and obedience, leaving exactly the right degree of freedom to subordinates. Of this essential and, as it were, transcendental quality, Power of Command, no analysis is possible; nothing can be said of it save affirmation. It is present, or it is not present: and none can tell you why.”<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Hilaire Belloc, *The Tactics and Strategy of the Great Duke of Marlborough*. Bristol, J. W. Arrowsmith Ltd. pp. 5-7.

### 3. IMPERIALISM

Under the incomparable leadership of Caesar, Roman imperialism came to Gaul. This also we shall study as we read Caesar's account; we shall watch its methods, its purposes, and its effects.

The conquest of Gaul is a classic example of imperialism. Imperialism is the effort or aim to extend the dominion of a king or of a nation beyond its national limits. It is generally motivated by ambition, as in the case of Alexander the Great, or by greed, as in the case of much of the European colonization in Africa and Asia. Imperialistic schemes are carried out in storm and stress; they call forth deeds of nobility and high aspiration, as well as the basest passions of cruelty, hate, and cowardice.

Roman imperialism in Gaul was motivated by the ambition of one man—Julius Caesar. "Caesar was ambitious: If it were so, it was a grievous fault." His aim was not only to reduce Gaul to the status of a Roman province, but perhaps even more to gain thereby the prestige and the power necessary to make himself the greatest dictator of Rome and, in fact if not in name, its first emperor. This he achieved.

Now if we study Caesar's clear record of this, his own conquest, we shall better understand ourselves, our country, and our world, as well as all human history.

For the patriotism of the Gauls was like our own patriotism, and on broad lines the conquest of Gaul has been repeated a dozen times. Change the military cloak of Caesar to the British colonial costume, and you have Robert Clive intriguing with the princes of India for the spread of Britain's power. Change the swords of the Gauls for guns, darken the complexion of Vercingetorix, and you have a Haile Selassie rallying a disunited country against the foreign invader.

The pages of Caesar can teach us the ways of men as they were two thousand years ago and as they still remain, though airplanes

have become the *explōrātōrēs* of the modern army, machine guns have superseded the shower of *pīla*, and the struggle for liberty and peace has spread from Gaul to all the world.

As you read, therefore, observe how the Gallic leaders, loving their liberty indeed, yet contributed, through their petty quarrels and selfish ambitions, through their narrowness and lack of foresight, to the conquest of their own country. Note, too, the lack of discipline in the Gallic peoples themselves. You will see how Caesar, in masterly fashion, made use of the weaknesses of the Gauls to deprive them of their freedom.

## 4. THE CONTEST FROM THE GALLIC SIDE

### THE LEADERS

Various petty chiefs; finally, Vercingetorix, a magnetic and noble leader, but handicapped and brought to a tragic end by the division and dissension of his jealous followers.

### THE PRIZE

Liberty and national integrity. For individuals: petty sovereignty over their own state or clan or over surrounding clans.

### THE MEANS

An army of courageous but undisciplined fighters, far more numerous than Caesar's army, but not inured to long sieges or continuous campaigning; depending—as semicivilized fighters usually do—on the effect of an initial furious assault.

### DISADVANTAGES

Lack of military discipline; emotional instability, with consequent impulsive action of people and rulers; above all, jealous dissension and frequent disloyalty among the chieftains of Gaul themselves.

## 5. THE CONTEST FROM THE ROMAN SIDE

### THE LEADER

Caesar, one of the greatest military geniuses of all time, a scholar, a diplomat, and an organizer, holding a great advantage over his enemy because of unity of command (as did the Germans in the early part of the Second World War).

### THE PRIZE

Gaul: man power for the armies of Rome (perhaps five million inhabitants), commerce, safe trading for the minerals and agricultural products of the country; Roman safety from the invasion of German or Celt. For Caesar: the prestige of a conqueror and a military machine to make him, ultimately, master of Rome.

### THE MEANS

A disciplined and highly trained army of, at most, fifty thousand men, inspired to high achievement and great endurance by the magnetic personality of Caesar; mastery of the science of military engineering; superior arms (*pilum* for hurling and *gladius* for thrusting).

### DISADVANTAGES

A campaign in a foreign country, with difficulties in obtaining supplies and constant danger of being cut off; a contest with men defending their homes and families, their own life and liberty.



PART II

ROMAN IMPERIALISM IN GAUL

AS REPORTED BY JULIUS CAESAR  
GOVERNOR OF THE ROMAN PROVINCE  
AND  
COMMANDER IN CHIEF OF THE ROMAN  
ARMIES IN GAUL



## 1. THE HELVETIAN DRIVE TO THE WEST

When Caesar took over his territories, he found, of course, that the Roman 'sphere of influence' already stretched far beyond the actual boundaries of the provinces. In every border tribe there were pro-Roman and anti-Roman parties, for no Gallic leader could adopt a neutral attitude towards the great imperialistic power that touched the very borders of his country.

Shortly after his appointment as governor of the province in Gaul, Caesar found an excellent opportunity for the assertion of a strong Roman policy. His interference in the affair of the Helvetians was the beginning of a line of action that could only lead to Roman imperialistic expansion into the whole of Gaul, eastward to the Rhine and northward to the English Channel.

### THE SCENE OF OPERATIONS

From his tent somewhere in Gaul Caesar sent on to Rome this crisp, brief description of the scene of his campaigns.<sup>1</sup> Little did he think that this was but a prelude to a long history of military operations in the 'cockpit' of Europe—France. On the Loire (Caesar's *Liger*) in 732 the march of Mohammedan invasion was stopped by the Christian forces under Charles Martel. Through the passes and up the valleys so well known to Caesar the Revolutionary armies of France and of Napoleon marched and counter-marched. At the Marne the Prussian thrust towards Paris was twice (1914 and 1918) stopped by the Allied command. It was on the shores of the ancient Roman province which Caesar once governed that our armies landed in August 1944. French batteries, German machine guns, and American GI's may often have guarded the very hills whence, centuries ago, Caesar directed the *triplex aciēs* of his legions. *Bellum continenter gerunt!*

---

<sup>1</sup> The Latin text is frequently simplified but it is based throughout on Caesar's own account.



—Courtesy of Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer

#### THE SHADOW OF A CONQUEROR FALLS ACROSS EUROPE

On the map of Gaul as Caesar describes it in his opening lines there falls for the first time in recorded history the shadow of a great conqueror. As the years march on the silhouette changes to that of successive Roman emperors, to the broad and burly Charlemagne, to the Hidalgo Philip II of Spain, to Richelieu and the Grand Monarch, to the short figure of Napoleon—and still today the shadows merge and change over Europe.

Generation after generation the tide of war has swept over Gaul, till today in its smiling fields, the peasant at his work may turn up the bones of a Spanish soldier, the foundations of a Roman fort, or a shell of modern make.

Gallia<sup>1</sup> est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam incolunt Aquītānī,<sup>2</sup> tertiam incolunt Gallī.

Hī<sup>3</sup> omnēs linguā,<sup>4</sup> lēgibus, aliisque rēbus multīs inter sē differunt.

Garumna<sup>5</sup> flūmen Gallōs ab Aquītānīs<sup>2</sup> dīvidit.

Matrona<sup>6</sup> et Sēquana<sup>7</sup> Gallōs ā Belgīs dīvidunt.

5

Hōrum<sup>8</sup> omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae<sup>9</sup> nam ā prōvinciā nostrā longissimē absunt et mercātōrēs<sup>10</sup> ad eōs nōn saepe veniunt.<sup>11</sup>

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**Belgae, Belgārum, m., the Belgians.**

**lingua, ae, tongue, language.**

**mercātor, mercātōris, merchant.**

<sup>1</sup> Gallia . . . omnis: Gallia was used in two different meanings. In a wide sense (as used here) it included the lands of the Belgians, the Aquitanians, and the Gauls. In a narrow sense it meant the part of Gaul inhabited by the Gallī. Compare our use of *America*, which is sometimes used with reference to North, Central, and South America and sometimes with reference to the United States only. By using *omnis* here Caesar makes it clear that he is using *Gallia* in a wide sense. Translate: *Gaul, taken as a whole . . .*

<sup>2</sup> Aquītānī, Aquītānōrum, the Aquitanians (āk wi tā'nī āns).

<sup>3</sup> What are the antecedents of hī?

<sup>4</sup> The Aquitanians spoke Spanish dialects; the language of the Gauls and Belgians is related to Welsh.

<sup>5</sup> Garumna, ae, *Garonne*, a river.

<sup>6</sup> Matrona, ae, *Marne*, a river.

<sup>7</sup> Sēquana, ae, *Seine*, a river.

<sup>8</sup> Name the antecedents of hōrum.

<sup>9</sup> King Albert of Belgium quoted this sentence to his people during the German invasion of 1914.

<sup>10</sup> Roman businessmen were trading in Gaul long before the Roman conquest.

<sup>11</sup> Thus the Belgians were less influenced by the civilization and luxury in-

Praetereā, proximī sunt Germānis, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter<sup>12</sup> bellum gerunt.<sup>13</sup>

### THE 'FIGHTING' HELVETIANS

10 Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs<sup>14</sup> virtūte superant, nam saepe cum Germānis contendunt.<sup>15</sup>

Aut enim suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**praetereā**, adv., *besides, furthermore.*

**Germānus, ī**, *German.*

**Rhēnus, ī**, *Rhine, the river.*

**quā dē causā**: lit., *for which reason; wherefore, therefore.*

**Helvētius, ī**, *Helvetian (hēl vē'shān).*

**quoque**, adv., *also.*

roduced by the Romans and led, therefore, a hardier and simpler life. How would this help explain *omnium fortissimī*? The Romans had had a province in southern Gaul for over sixty years (since 121 B. C.).

<sup>12</sup> *continenter*, adv., *without interruption, continuously, continually.*

<sup>13</sup> The old, old story noted here by Caesar has remained true ever since. The Rhine and the land about it (Alsace, Lorraine, the Saar Valley) have been the prize of many a struggle. The French and Germans have quarreled continuously about their possession. At the outbreak of World War II, this frontier was guarded by the Maginot Line and the Siegfried Line. Nevertheless, battle once more surged through these lands.

<sup>14</sup> Is *Gallōs* used here to refer to the inhabitants of *Gallia omnis* or of the *tertia pars*?

<sup>15</sup> The Rhine was regarded as the natural boundary of the German lands, but the Germans were pressing hard against the frontier. They frequently raided and even settled in Gallic territory. Thus the Germans were carrying out a policy of subjugation and conquest in Gaul and so were direct rivals of Caesar and the Roman power. Caesar would have to meet this threat as well.

ORGETORIX CONSPIRES TO BECOME DICTATOR  
OF ALL GAUL

The Helvetians were restless. They wanted a fairer land than their own narrow valleys—a land where they might expand and reach their 'rightful' development. One of their nobles—a man of wealth, too—saw in this restlessness a lever to lift himself to power.

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus et dītissimus<sup>16</sup> fuit Orgetorīx.<sup>17</sup>

Is, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus, conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis<sup>18</sup> fēcit. 15

Tōtīus enim Galliae imperium cupīvit.

Helvētīi locī nātūrā undique continentur; ūnā ex<sup>19</sup> parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō<sup>20</sup> atque altissimō, quī Helvētiōs ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Jūrā altissimō, quī Sēquanōs ab Helvētīis dīvidit; tertiā ex parte lacū<sup>21</sup> Lemannō<sup>22</sup> et flūmine 20 Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētīis dīvidit.

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**Orgetorīx, Orgetorīgīs, Orgetorix** (ōr jet'ō riks).

**cupiditās, cupiditātis, desire, eagerness.**

**conjūrātiō, conjūrātiōnis, conspiracy, plot.**

**Jūra, ae, the Jura** (jōō'rá) *Mountains.*

**Sēquanus, ī, Sequanian** (sé kwā'nī ān).

**Rhodanus, ī, the Rhone** (rōn), a river.

<sup>16</sup> dītissimus, a, um, *richest, wealthiest.*

<sup>17</sup> What would be the *normal* position of the word **Orgetorīx**? Notice how the unusual position emphasizes the important character.

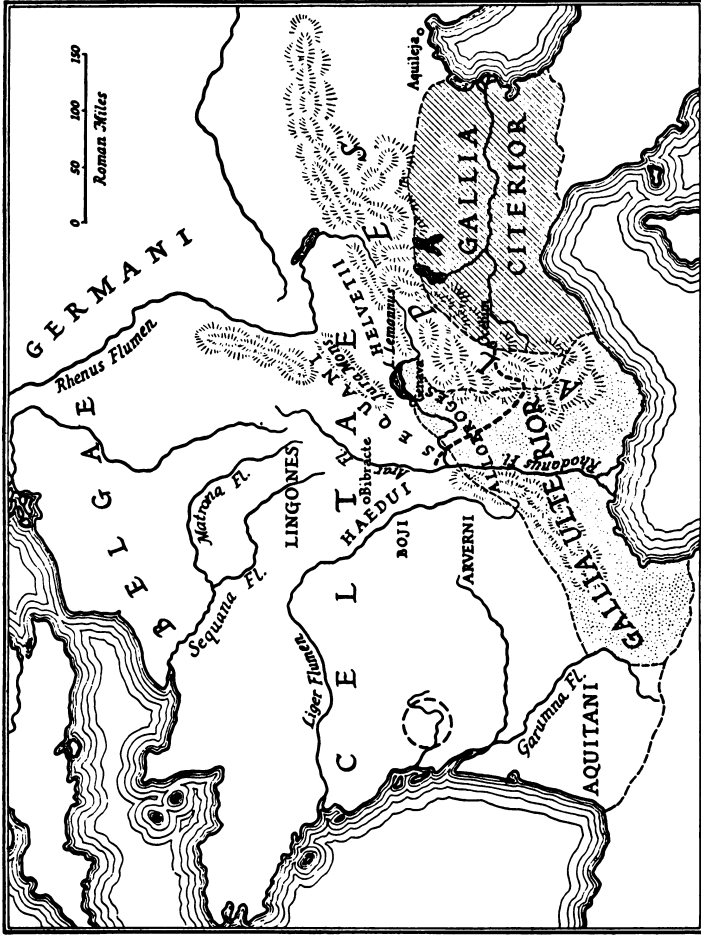
<sup>18</sup> nōbilitās, nōbilitātis, *the nobility.*

<sup>19</sup> Note that a short preposition often stands between its object and a modifying adjective. Find the boundaries of the Helvetian lands on the map, page 22.

<sup>20</sup> When the Latin superlative is used alone (without *omnium*) it is generally best translated by *very*. Thus, *very wide*, not *widest*.

<sup>21</sup> lacus, ūs, *lake.*

<sup>22</sup> Lemannus, ī, *(the lake) of Geneva.*



○ The land toward which the Helvetians directed their march—fair and fertile valleys whence raids might easily be made on the Roman Province.  
 - - - - - Caesar's dash across the Alps.

Quā dē causā nōn facile finitimīs bellum inferre poterant.  
 Belli autem atque glōriae cupidī erant.

THE HELVETIANS AGREE TO THE PROPOSAL  
 OF ORGETORIX

Itaque hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōti, cōn-  
 stituērunt dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exīre. 25

Omnia quae ad profectiōnem pertinēbant comparāvērunt.<sup>23</sup>

Jūmentōrum<sup>24</sup> et carrōrum<sup>25</sup> quam maximum numerum parā-  
 vērunt.

Magnam cōpiam frūmentī parāvērunt.

Cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amicitiam cōfirmāvērunt. 30

THE SECRET DIPLOMACY OF ORGETORIX

Orgetorix lēgatiōnem ad cīvitātēs finitimās suscēpit.

Casticus,<sup>26</sup> Sēquanus, auctōritāte Orgetorīgis inductus, rēgnum in  
 cīvitāte suā occupāre cōstituit.

Dumnorix,<sup>27</sup> Haedus, quoque ab Orgetorige inductus, rēgnum in  
 cīvitāte suā occupāre cōstituit.<sup>28</sup> 35

WORDS TO REMEMBER

profectiō, profectiōnis, *setting out, departure* (cf. proficīsor, depart).

lēgatiō, lēgatiōnis, *embassy, legation* (cf. lēgātus).

Haedus, ī, *Haeduan* (hēd'ú ān).

<sup>23</sup> The Helvetians planned to make their preparations in two years. They intended to set out in 58 B. C.

<sup>24</sup> jumentum, ī, *yoke-animal* (cattle, mules, and horses).

<sup>25</sup> carrus, ī, *wagon, cart*.

<sup>26</sup> Casticus, ī, *Casticus*, a Sequanian noble.

<sup>27</sup> Dumnorix, Dumnorīgis, *Dumnorix* (dūm'nó rīks), an Haeduan noble.

<sup>28</sup> Orgetorix used the opportunity thus afforded to make secret agreements with Casticus and Dumnorix for the conquest and partition of Gaul. He in-



THE HELVETIANS FORCE ORGETORIX TO PLEAD HIS CAUSE IN CHAINS

Orgetorix, "Facile," inquit, "rēgnum occupāre atque tōtius Galliae imperium obtinēre possumus. Omnibus meis cōpiīs vōs adjuvābō ut facile rēgnum occupētis."

Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē jūsjūrandum<sup>29</sup> dedērunt.

- 40 Ita Orgetorix trēs firmissimōs populōs conjūxit ut per eōs tōtius Galliae imperium obtinēret.

#### THE BETRAYAL AND DEATH OF ORGETORIX

The secret negotiations of Orgetorix were, however, betrayed to the Helvetians. They ordered Orgetorix to stand trial for his life, but he escaped the trial through the armed interference of his dependents. While the magistrates were gathering a force to take counter measures, Orgetorix suddenly died. It was suspected that he had committed suicide.

---

tended to use the occasion of the Helvetian migration to make himself their dictator and, through them, one of the rulers of all Gaul. This, of course, was not the intention of the Helvetians themselves. They did not have the institution of kingship.

<sup>29</sup> jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, *oath*.

## THE HELVETIANS CONTINUE THEIR PLANS

Post Orgetorigis mortem, Helvëtiî tamen id quod cōstituerant facere cōnābantur.

Ex finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exire parābant.

Cum omnia quae ad profectiōnem pertinent parāvissent, oppida 45 sua omnia incendērunt.<sup>30</sup>

Praetereā frūmentum omne praeter id quod<sup>31</sup> sēcum ferre cōstituerant incendērunt.

Rauracī<sup>32</sup> et Tulingī<sup>33</sup> et Latobrigī,<sup>34</sup> fīnitimī, ab Helvëtiis inductī, cum eīs exiērunt.

50

Helvëtiî Bojōs quoque sociōs sibi jungēbant.

## THEY DECIDE TO TREK THROUGH THE ROMAN PROVINCE

Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exire possent;<sup>35</sup> ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,<sup>36</sup> inter montem Jūram

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

omnīnō, adv., *in all, altogether, entirely.*

Bojī, Bojōrum, *the Boii* (boi't).

domō: *from home*; Gr. 915-917.

<sup>30</sup> The Helvetians burned twelve towns and four hundred villages before setting out. By this action they intended to make it impossible to yield to any discouragement and to return to their former home. Napoleon III, who made a thorough study of Caesar's campaign, estimated that the Helvetians would need 6,000 wagons and 24,000 yoke animals (*jūmenta*). Their baggage train would stretch seventy-nine miles in single file.

<sup>31</sup> They planned to take provisions for three months.

<sup>32</sup> Rauracī, Rauracōrum, *the Rauraci* (rō'ra sī).

<sup>33</sup> Tulingī, Tulingōrum, *the Tulingi* (tú līn'jī).

<sup>34</sup> Latobrigī, Latobrigōrum, *the Latobrigi* (lá tōb'rī jī).

<sup>35</sup> possent; subjunctive in a relative characteristic clause, Gr. 633.

<sup>36</sup> This road ran along the north bank of the Rhone into the territory of the Sequani. The road itself was so narrow that the wagons could scarcely get

et flūmen Rhodanum; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō  
55 facilius.

Nam facile trānsire potuērunt Rhodanum, quī fluit inter finēs  
Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum quī nūper ab Rōmānīs pācātī erant.

Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum proximumque Helvētiōrum fīni-  
bus est Genava.<sup>37</sup>

62 Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet.

Itaque Helvētīi per finēs Allobrogum ire cōstituērunt.

Cum omnēs rēs ad profectiōnem comparāvissent, diem dixerunt,<sup>38</sup>  
quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs convenirent.<sup>39</sup>

#### THE NEWS REACHES CAESAR. HE ACTS SWIFTLY

A migration of such size (the Helvetians numbered 368,000 persons) could hardly pass through the Roman province without doing grave damage. There would be, too, the danger of clashes

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

multō, *much*, by *much*; ablative of degree of difference, Gr. 771.

fluō, *fluere*, flūxī, 3, intr., *flow* (cf. fluid).

Allobrogēs, Allobrogum, *the Allobroges* (ā lōb'ró jēs).

rīpa, *ae*, *bank* (of a river).

through in single file. An enemy could therefore easily block the pass (the Pas de l'Ecluse). On the other hand, the journey through the province would take them into the lands of the Allobroges who had but recently (61 B. C.) revolted against the Romans and had been again subdued. Besides, there was but one legion (4,000-6,000 men) in the province and the new governor, Julius Caesar, had not yet come up from Rome.

<sup>37</sup> Genava, *ae*, *Geneva*.

<sup>38</sup> dicō, *dīcere*, dīxī, *dictus*, 3, tr., *say*, *tell*. When used with diēs, dicō means *set a day*.

<sup>39</sup> quā diē . . . convenirent; relative characteristic clause, Gr. 633; diē is ablative of time, Gr. 920.

between the inhabitants and these foreigners. But more than this, Caesar feared that the vacated valleys south of the Jura Mountains would offer the Germans from beyond the Rhine another foothold in Gaul. The Helvetian migration was therefore clearly against Roman interests.

Ea rēs Caesarī nuntiāta est.<sup>40</sup>

Contendit ab urbe<sup>41</sup> proficiscī et quam maximīs potuit itineribus 65 in Galliam Ulteriōrem contendit.

Ad Genavam<sup>42</sup> pervēnit.<sup>43</sup>

Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potuit militum numerum imperāvīt (erat omnīnō in Galliā Ulteriōre legiō ūna).<sup>44</sup>

Pontem quī ex Helvētiīs ad Genavam<sup>42</sup> pertinēbat rescindī<sup>45</sup> iussit. 70

#### THE HELVETIANS ATTEMPT NEGOTIATIONS

Helvētiī cum dē ējus adventū certiōrēs factī essent, lēgātōs, nō-bilissimōs cīvitātis, ad eum mīsērunt.

“Sine ūllā injūriā,” inquit, “iter per prōvinciam faciēmus.

Aliud iter habēmus nūllum.”

---

#### WORD TO REMEMBER

inquit: *they say, they said.*

---

<sup>40</sup> This was about the middle of March, 58 B. C.

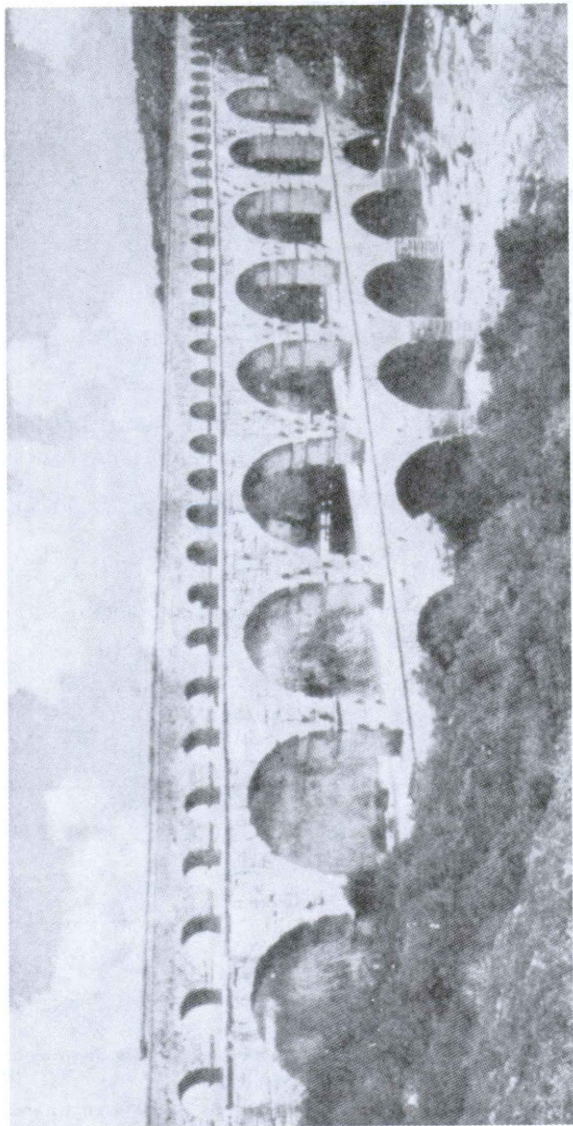
<sup>41</sup> Caesar had not yet taken over his governorship and was still at Rome.

<sup>42</sup> Genava, ae, *Geneva*.

<sup>43</sup> This was about a week after his departure from Rome. He is said to have covered ninety miles a day—no mean speed for those days.

<sup>44</sup> The regulation strength of a legion was 6,000 men; its actual strength was frequently as low as 4,000.

<sup>45</sup> rescindō, rescindere, rescidī, rescissus, 3, tr., *cut away, break down, destroy.*



—*Ewing Galloway*

#### THE PONT DU GARD

Among all the remains of Roman construction, remarkable for its beauty and boldness of design, is this aqueduct bridge still standing near Nîmes in France, the Pont du Gard. The lowest course of arches contains six, one of which has a span of 75 feet and the rest spans of 60 feet. All the arches in the second course reach a span of 75 feet. The water conduit ran along the top. The structure rises to a height of 180 feet—a noble and enduring monument to Rome's engineers and architects.

## CAESAR PLAYS FOR TIME

Caesar hoc sē nōn concēdere dēbēre putābat.

75

Memoriā enim tenēbat Helvētiōs cōsulem Rōmānum occīdisse exercitumque ējus pepulisse atque superāvisse.<sup>46</sup>

Itaque nōn exīstimābat Helvētiōs sine ūllā injūriā per prōvinciā iter factūrōs esse.

Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere<sup>47</sup> posset dum<sup>48</sup> militēs quōs im- 80  
perāverat convenirent, lēgātīs respondit sē dē hāc rē dēliberātū-  
rum<sup>49</sup> esse.

“Revertite,”<sup>50</sup> inquit, “ad Īdūs Aprīlēs.”<sup>51</sup>

## CAESAR BUILDS A LINE OF DEFENSE

Intereā, eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat militibusque<sup>52</sup> quī ex  
prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū<sup>53</sup> Lemannō,<sup>54</sup> quī in flūmen Rhoda-

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessus, 3, tr. and intr., *withdraw, yield, allow*.  
spatium, ī, *space, extent, interval*.  
intereā, adv., *meanwhile*.

<sup>46</sup> In 107 B.C. one of the Helvetian tribes had defeated a Roman army and compelled the survivors to pass “under the yoke.” The “yoke” was erected by placing a javelin across two upright javelins. Passing under the yoke was a symbol of surrender.

<sup>47</sup> intercēdō, intercēdere, intercessī, intercessum, 3, intr., *intervene*.

<sup>48</sup> dum, conj., *until*; Gr. 567.

<sup>49</sup> dēliberō, 1, intr., *consider, deliberate*.

<sup>50</sup> revertite: *return*; imperative plural.

<sup>51</sup> ad Īdūs Aprīlēs: *on the Ides of April*, that is, the 13th of April; by our calendar, the 9th.

<sup>52</sup> eā legiōne . . . militibusque; ablative of means, Gr. 774.

<sup>53</sup> lacus, ūs, *lake*.

<sup>54</sup> Lemannus, ī, (*the lake*) of Geneva.

num fluit, ad montem Jūram, quī finēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, milia<sup>55</sup> passuum ūndēvigintī<sup>56</sup> mūrūm fossamque perdūxit.<sup>57</sup>

90 Praesidia disposuit et castella mūnīvit quō facilius Helvētiōs prohibēre posset.

#### CAESAR'S ANSWER

Cum ea diēs quam cum lēgātīs cōstituerat vēnisset et lēgātī ad eum revertissent, Caesar negāvit sē mōre populī Rōmānī ūllī posse iter per prōvinciam dare.

“Sī flūmen,” inquit, “trānsīre cōnābiminī, prohibēbō!”

#### THE HELVETIANS ATTEMPT A CROSSING

95 Itaque Helvētiī flūmen Rhodanum trānsīre cōnātī sunt, sed operis mūnitiōne<sup>58</sup> et tēlis repulsī sunt.

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**perdūcō, perdūcere, perdūxī, perductus**, 3, tr., *lead through, construct, influence, prolong.*

**castellum, ī, fort.**

**mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom; mōre, according to (the) custom.**

**sī, conj., if.**

**mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis, fortification.**

<sup>55</sup> **mīlia**; accusative of extent of space, Gr. 761.

<sup>56</sup> **ūndēvigintī**, *nineteen.*

<sup>57</sup> Caesar fortified the southern bank of the river for a distance of nineteen miles; he probably threw up ramparts only where the bank itself did not provide a natural defense. The science of engineering was remarkably advanced among the ancient Romans. Monuments of strong design and construction are scattered throughout all the lands where Rome once ruled. The military advantages which Roman engineering gave the legions is evident in the construction of fortifications and in siege operations throughout the campaign in Gaul.

<sup>58</sup> **operis mūnitiōne**: *by the fortifications.*

## THE HELVETIANS TRY THE OTHER ROAD

Relinquēbatur ūna per Sēquanōs via.

Sēquanī, auctōritāte Haeduōrum inductī,<sup>59</sup> iter per finēs suōs Helvētiīs dedērunt.

Sēquanī et Helvētiī obsidēs inter sē dedērunt: Sēquanī nē itinere 100 Helvētiōs prohibērent, Helvētiī ut sine injūriā per eōrum finēs trānsīrent.

## CAESAR LEARNS THE ENEMY'S PLANS

Caesar certior factus est Helvētiōs cōstituisse per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum<sup>60</sup> finēs facere.

Santonēs<sup>60</sup> nōn longē ā Tolōsātium<sup>61</sup> fīnibus absunt. 105

Haec civitās est in prōvinciā.

Itaque Caesar intellegēbat magnum perīculum prōvinciae futūrum esse.<sup>62</sup>

## CAESAR RAISES REINFORCEMENTS

Hāc dē causā eī mūnitiōnī quam fēcerat Titum Labiēnum, lēgā-

## WORD TO REMEMBER

**Titus (ī) Labiēnus (ī)**, *Titus Labienus* (tī'tūs lāb ī ē'nūs), Caesar's most trusted lieutenant, a man of courage and sound military judgment.

<sup>59</sup> The Sequanians at first refused permission to the Helvetians, who then asked the Haedui to use their influence for them with the Sequanians.

<sup>60</sup> **Santonēs**, **Santonum**, *the Santones* (sān'tó nēs).

<sup>61</sup> **Tolōsātēs**, **Tolōsātium**, *the Tolosates* (tōl ó sā'tēs), the inhabitants of Tolosa (modern Toulouse).

<sup>62</sup> There were no natural barriers between the lands of the Santones and the province. Raids could easily be made into Roman territory.



—*Pictures, Inc.*

A British column here winds its way into hostile territory on India's northwest frontier much as Caesar's *āgmen* wound through the hostile Alps to the relief of the Haedui. On the outposts of empire, when mechanized equipment cannot be used, the task of the foot soldier is ever the same.

110 tum, praefēcit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus<sup>63</sup> contendit.

In Italiā duās legiōnēs cōscripsit, et trēs quae circum Aquilejam<sup>64</sup>

---

WORD TO REMEMBER

**circum**, prep. w. acc., *around*.

---

<sup>63</sup> **Magna itinera** or **maxima itinera** were forced marches; i. e., more than the usual distance was covered daily. The average daily march was twelve to fifteen miles; a forced march would be about eighteen to twenty-five miles. What would be considered an average march on level ground would become a forced march for an army advancing through mountains or in dense forests full of fallen trees.

<sup>64</sup> **Aquileja**, **ae**, *Aquileia* (āk wī lē'yā), a Roman town near modern Trieste. See map, page 22.



—Keystone View Co.

#### THE ALPS

Before the days of the jeep and the airplane the Alps were Italy's natural barrier to invasion, and yet across them Hannibal, Caesar, and Napoleon led victorious armies in history-making marches.

hiemābant ex hibernīs dūxit et, quā proximum iter in Ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque<sup>65</sup> legiōnibus ire contendit.

#### HE FIGHTS HIS WAY THROUGH THE ALPS AND PENETRATES INTO NON-ROMAN TERRITORY

Ibi Ceutrōnēs<sup>66</sup> et aliī quī Alpēs incolēbant, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnābantur.

115

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

hiemō, 1, intr., *winter, spend the winter.*

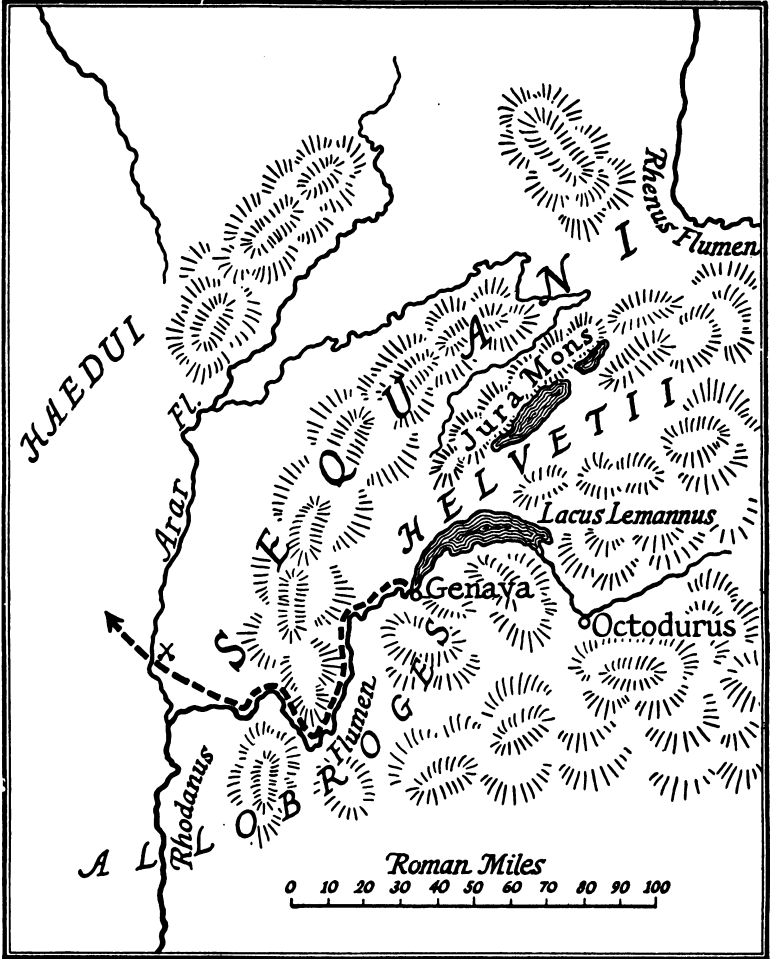
quā, relative adv., *where.*

Alpēs, Alpium, *the Alps.*

---

<sup>65</sup> quīnque, *five.*

<sup>66</sup> Ceutrōnēs, Ceutrōnum, *the Centrones (sū'trō nēz), a wild mountain tribe dwelling in the Alps.*



----- Route followed by the Helvetians after Caesar blocked their passage of the Rhone.  
 X Here Caesar cut down the Tigurine clan.

Hōs omnēs multīs proeliīs pepulit et in prōvinciam diē<sup>67</sup> septimō<sup>68</sup> pervēnit.

Inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs<sup>69</sup> exercitum dūxit.

Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī. 120

Helvētīi jam per angustiās et finēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant, eōrumque agrōs vastābant.

Haeduī sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn poterant.

Itaque lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt quī auxilium rogārent. 125

Lēgātī, "Amīcī populī Rōmānī," inquit, "sumus.

Paene in cōspectū vestrī exercitūs, agrī vastārī, liberī in servitūtem dūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbent."

Allobrogēs quoque, quī trāns Rhodanum agrōs habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. 130

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**inde**, adv., *thence, from that place, from there.*

**extrā**, prep. w. acc., *outside, beyond.*

**jam**, adv., *already, now.*

**paene**, adv., *almost, nearly.*

**cōspectus, ūs**, *sight.*

**liberī, liberōrum**, *children.*

**servitūs, servitūtis**, *slavery (cf. servitute).*

<sup>67</sup> diē; ablative of time when, Gr. 921.

<sup>68</sup> septimus, a, um, *seventh.*

<sup>69</sup> Segusiāvī, Segusiāvōrum, *the Segusiavi* (sé gú shā'vī), a tribe friendly to the Romans, amīcī populī Rōmānī. Caesar now had six legions (perhaps 25,000 men) and some Gallic cavalry. The Helvetians could put about 92,000 fighting men in the field. Caesar led his reinforced army into non-Roman territory. By this action he proclaimed to the Gauls that, when Roman interests demanded it, he would follow a policy of armed interference.

Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar sociōs adjuvāre atque Helvētiōs vī prohibēre cōstituit.

#### A SURPRISE ATTACK

Flūmen est Arar,<sup>70</sup> quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum fluit.

135 Id flūmen Helvētiī trānsībant.

Dē hāc rē per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trēs jam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse; quārtam vēō partem reliquam esse.

140 Dē tertiā vigiliā<sup>71</sup> cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus, ad eam partem pervēnit<sup>72</sup> quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat.

Eōs impeditōs aggressus, magnam partem eōrum interfēcit.

Reliquī sē fugae mandāvērunt, atque in proximās silvās<sup>73</sup> abdidērunt.

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**explōrātōr, explōrātōris, scout.** The **explōrātōrēs** were mounted patrols.  
**quārtus, a, um, fourth.**

**vēō, adv., in truth, but, however.**

**vigilia, ae, watch.** The Romans divided the time from sunset to sunrise into four 'watches.'

**nōndum, adv., not yet.**

<sup>70</sup> **Arar, Araris, m., the Saone (sōn), a river.**

<sup>71</sup> **dē tertiā vigiliā:** during the third watch (notice the meaning of **dē** in such phrases); i. e., after midnight.

<sup>72</sup> Caesar was able to advance upon them so unexpectedly because his movements were masked by rising ground. Every great general—Hannibal, Caesar, Napoleon—has owed a great deal of his superiority to rapidity of movement and his intelligent use of natural advantages of position. Those who had not yet crossed the river belonged to the Tigurine clan.

<sup>73</sup> in . . . **silvās;** the accusative is used because the Helvetians hid themselves by fleeing; hence motion is implied in **abdidērunt.**

Post hoc proelium, ut reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī<sup>74</sup> fēcit, atque ita exercitum trādūxit.<sup>75</sup> 145

#### THE HELVETIANS PARLEY

After this disaster the Helvetians again tried to negotiate and even resorted to threats. But Caesar met all their advances with a cold refusal.

The Helvetians then continued their march, followed by Caesar's army. Meanwhile, the grain which the Haeduan had promised the Romans failed to arrive. Caesar discovered that disaffected elements among the Haeduan were preventing the delivery of supplies. He therefore lost some time in counteracting the influence of the anti-Roman party among the Haeduan. Meanwhile, his supplies were on the point of giving out. He then looked to Bibracte, the main city and supply center of the Haeduan, for provisions.

#### CAESAR TURNS ASIDE FOR SUPPLIES. THE ENEMY FOLLOWS

Ā Bibractī,<sup>76</sup> oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum duodēvigintī<sup>77</sup> aberat.

Itaque iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit, ac Bibracte<sup>78</sup> ire contendit.

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**amplius**, adv., *more*.

**āvertō**, **āvertere**, **āvertī**, **āversus**, 3, tr., *turn away, turn aside*.

<sup>74</sup> **Ararī**; the ablative of **Arar**, **Araris**, m., *the Saone*.

<sup>75</sup> Caesar constructed a pontoon bridge and transported his entire force within twenty-four hours. The Helvetians had taken three weeks to cross.

<sup>76</sup> **Bibracte**, **Bibractis** (abl. -e or -ī), n., *Bibracte* (bī brăc'tē), town of the Haeduan, situated on a hill now called Mont Beuvray.

<sup>77</sup> **duodēvigintī**, *eighteen*.

<sup>78</sup> **Bibracte**; accusative of place to which; prepositions are generally omitted with names of towns, Gr. 917.



—Ewing Galloway

#### HISTORIC GATEWAY

A passage in the Alps that dates from the days of the Roman occupation.

Ea rēs per fugitīvōs hostibus nuntiāta est.

Helvétīī, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō, nostrōs ā 150  
novissimō agmine īnsequī coepērunt.

#### CAESAR PREPARES TO FIGHT

Hāc rē animadversā, Caesar cōpiās suās in proximum collem  
dūxit.

Equitātum mīsīt quī sustinēret hostium impetum.

Intereā ipse in colle mediō<sup>79</sup> triplicem aciem<sup>80</sup> īnstrūxit legiōnum 155  
quattuor veterānārū.

In summō jugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā Citeriōre nūper cōn-  
scripserat et omnia auxilia collocāvit.

Ita tōtum montem hominibus complēvit.

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

fugitīvus, ī, *runaway slave*.

commūtō, 1, tr., *change, alter*.

convertō, convertere, convertī, conversus, 3, tr., *turn around, wheel about, change*.

ā novissimō agmine: *from the rear, in the rear*.

īnsequor, īnsequī, īnsecūtus sum, 3, tr., *pursue*.

triplex (*gen. triplicis*), *triple*; Gr. 81.

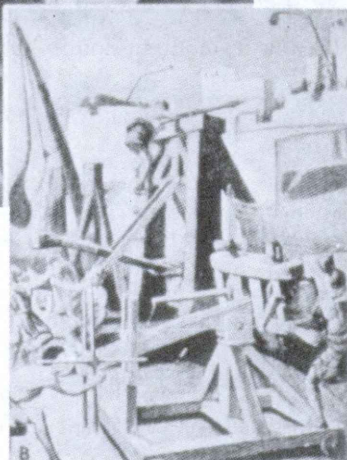
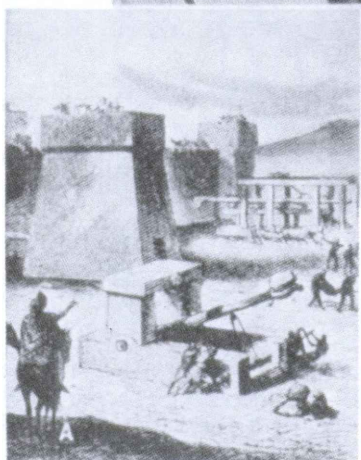
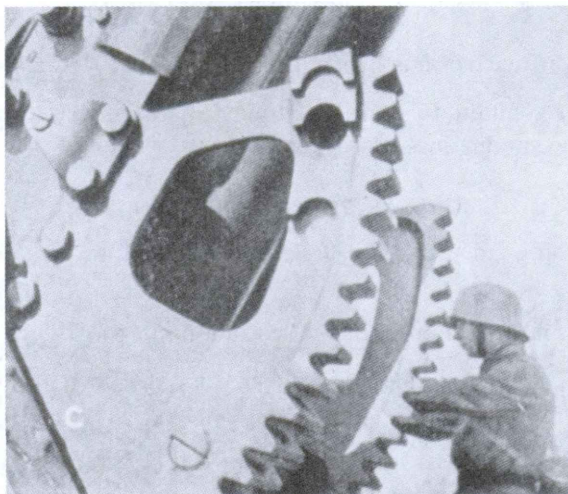
veterānus, a, um, *veteran*.

jugum, ī, *yoke, ridge*.

Gallia (ae) Citerior (Citeriōris), *Hither Gaul*, the region in Italy between the Po River and the Alps.

<sup>79</sup> in colle mediō: *in the middle of the hill*, i. e., halfway up the hill.

<sup>80</sup> The legion was drawn up in three lines (*triplicem aciem*) by cohorts. Each line was eight men deep. When the men in front grew tired they stepped back to rest while a fresh rank came forward to take their place. This rotation of ranks enabled the Romans to maintain a vigorous front in the line.



—Culver Service and Pictures, Inc.

EXHIBITS IN WORLD-OLD ARMAMENT RACE

A. *Ballista*

B. *Catapulta*

C. *Modern Heavy Gun*

As far back as the records of human history go, man has always applied the science of his age to the construction of armaments. The sling and bow of the savage, the catapulta and ballista of the Romans, the powerful crossbow of the Middle Ages, the siege guns of today mark this progress. Today, once more, new scientific advance is giving us more complicated and more devastating weapons.

Impedimenta sarcināsque in ūnum locum cōferrī, et eum ab eīs 160  
quī in superiōre aciē erant mūnīrī jussit.<sup>81</sup>

### THE 'ZERO' HOUR

What thoughts were in Caesar's mind as, from his elevated position, he watched the long column of the Helvetians coming onto the field? His first pitched battle in Gaul, and that with a foe well accustomed to fighting and now desperately in earnest! All that great military glory which history records of him was yet in the future. He stood at the threshold of his military career, and that career turned on the outcome of this day. To lose would mean destruction not only of his army but of all his ambitions. And now the Helvetians—shouting, shields locked in front and overhead—were advancing. Caesar and his staff dismounted to encourage the men by sharing their struggle on foot.

Helvētīi, cum omnibus suis carrīs<sup>82</sup> secūtī, impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt.

Ipsī, cōfertissimā<sup>83</sup> aciē, rējectō nostrō equitātū, phalange<sup>84</sup> factā, sub<sup>85</sup> prīmam nostram aciem successērunt. 165

### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**sarcina**, ae, *pack* (carried by the individual soldier). Each legionary carried on the march about forty-five to sixty pounds of arms and baggage.

**succēdō**, **succēdere**, **successī**, **successum**, 3, intr., *come up to, advance, am next to*.

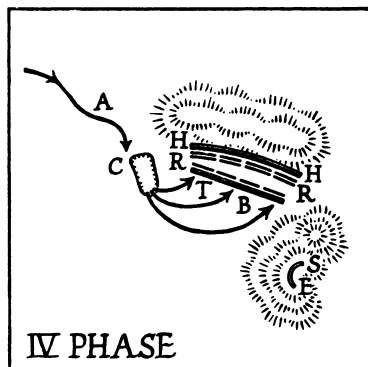
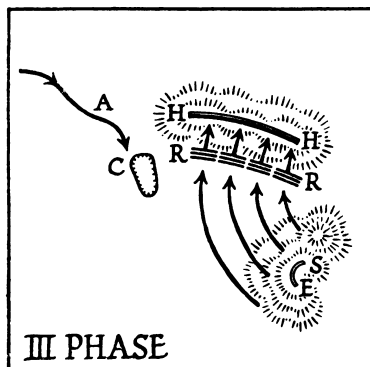
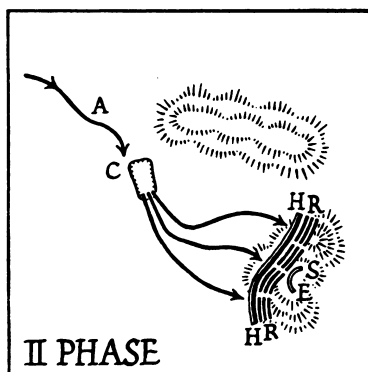
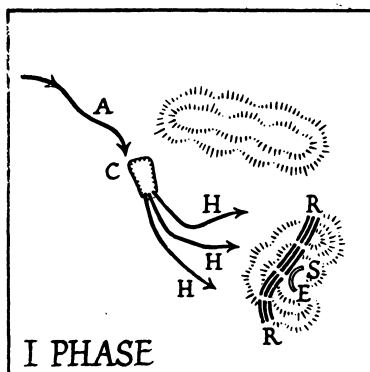
<sup>81</sup> The execution of the movement by which Caesar prepared to receive the Helvetian attack occupied something like two hours.

<sup>82</sup> **carrus**, ī, *wagon, cart*.

<sup>83</sup> **cōfertus**, a, um, *dense, compact*.

<sup>84</sup> **phalanx**, **phalangis**, *phalanx*, a closed array formed by interlocking the shields in front and overhead.

<sup>85</sup> **sub**; a preposition which here means *up to* and is used with the accusative because motion is expressed.



CAESAR'S FIRST BATTLE IN GAUL

S. Summit of the hill on which Caesar drew up his men. E. The entrenchment to protect the baggage. Here were the new recruits. R-R. The *triplex aciēs*. A. The Helvetian column coming up. H. The Helvetians advancing towards Caesar. C. The familiar carts and cattle of the Helvetians. In the second phase, about one o'clock in the afternoon, the Helvetians are pushing up the hill. The column (A) is still winding up. In the third phase the Helvetians retreat to a neighboring hill, pursued by the *triplex aciēs*. Column A is still coming up. Finally, in the fourth phase, the Boii (B) and Tulingi (T) arrive and attack the Romans in the rear. The *tertia aciēs* meets them. The Helvetians on the hill return to the attack.

## THE BATTLE BEGINS

(It was now about one o'clock in the afternoon.)

Caesar, cohortātus suōs, proelium commisit.

Militēs, ē locō superiōre pilīs<sup>86</sup> missis, facile hostium phalangem<sup>87</sup> perfrēgērunt.<sup>88</sup>

Eā perfractā,<sup>88</sup> gladiis dēstrictis,<sup>89</sup> in eōs impetum fēcērunt.

Galli tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et ad montem 170 quī suberat<sup>90</sup> sē recipere coepērunt.

## THE HELVETIAN REAR GUARD ARRIVES

Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris, Boji<sup>91</sup> et Tulingi,<sup>92</sup> quī hominum milibus circiter quīndecim<sup>93</sup> agmen hostium claudēbant

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

tandem, adv., *at last, at length, finally.*

dēfessus, a, um, *exhausted, wearied, worn out.*

circiter, adv., *about.*

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, 3, tr., *shut, close.*

<sup>86</sup> These javelins were seven feet long and had soft metal just behind the tips which would therefore bend on striking and be useless to the enemy. Sometimes, too, they penetrated the overlapping shields of the phalanx, bent back on the other side and so locked the shields together, thus doing great damage to the ranks of the enemy. This discharge of the heavy pīla parallels the barrage of modern warfare which precedes the advance line of a charge. The enemy has no time to recover and reform before the attack is upon them. Each legionary soldier had two pīla as part of his regular equipment for battle.

<sup>87</sup> phalanx, phalangis, *phalanx.*

<sup>88</sup> perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfractus, 3, tr., *break through.*

<sup>89</sup> dēstringō, dēstringere, dēstrinxī, dēstrictus, 3, tr., *unsheathe, draw.*

<sup>90</sup> subsum, subesse, subfuī, intr., *am near.*

<sup>91</sup> Boji, Bojōrum, *the Boii* (boi'i), allies of the Helvetians; see line 51.

<sup>92</sup> Tulingi, Tulingōrum, *the Tulingi* (tulin'ji), allies of the Helvetians; see line 49.

<sup>93</sup> quīndecim, *fifteen.*

et novissimīs praesidiō erant,<sup>94</sup> ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō<sup>95</sup>  
175 aggressī circumvērunt.<sup>96</sup>

Hōc vīsō, Helvētiī quī in montem sē recēperant, proelium re-  
dintegrāre<sup>97</sup> coepērunt.

Rōmānī signa bipertitō<sup>98</sup> intulērunt, prīma et secunda aciēs ut  
victīs resisteret, tertia ut venientēs sustinēret.<sup>99</sup>

### THE DECISION OF ARMS

180 Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācritēr pugnātum est.<sup>100</sup>

Tandem hostēs diūtius sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn pote-  
rant.<sup>101</sup>

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**latus, lateris, n., side, flank.**

**circumveniō, circumvenīre, circumvērni, circumventus, 4, tr., come around, surround, cut off, betray (circum, around + veniō).**

**anceps (gen. ancipitis), with two sides, double; Gr. 81.**

<sup>94</sup> novissimīs praesidiō erant; the double dative, Gr. 731; lit., *were for a guard to the rear.*

<sup>95</sup> ab latere apertō: *on the exposed flank.* The shield was worn on the left arm; hence the right side was *exposed.* **Ab latere apertō** is a technical term for *on the right flank.*

<sup>96</sup> The Helvetians had attacked before the whole column (fifteen miles long) had come up. The Boii and Tulingi who formed the rear guard came onto the field only after the first repulse of the Helvetians. They were thus enabled to take the Romans on the flank and rear.

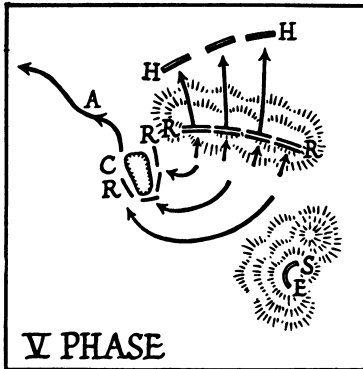
<sup>97</sup> redintegrō, 1, tr., *renew.*

<sup>98</sup> bipertitō, adv., *in two parts, in two divisions.*

<sup>99</sup> The **triplex aciēs** proves its worth. Easily and without confusion the third and last line about-faces to meet the new danger from the Boii and Tulingi.

<sup>100</sup> pugnātum est; Gr. 331-332.

<sup>101</sup> The semibarbarous warriors of the Helvetians, though terrible in their opening mass attack, were no match for Caesar's trained men in steady and sustained fighting.



H. The Helvetians retreating. A. The Helvetic column now in flight. R-R. The *triplex aciēs*. C. The carts and cattle of the Helvetians. During the late afternoon and night the Helvetians are in flight while a desperate struggle takes place at the baggage cache.

Itaque alterī<sup>102</sup> sē in montem recēpērunt, alterī<sup>102</sup> ad impedīmenta et carrōs<sup>103</sup> suōs sē con- 185 tulērunt.

“Before the sun went down, evil tidings must have reached the non-combatants who were still wending their way towards the field. It is certain that many of the wagons never came into the laager. What despair fell upon the baffled emigrants; how the jaded cattle were headed round again towards the north, and goaded through that night; how those who escaped the slaughter tramped

after, and told the tale of the calamity; the din, the confusion, the long weariness of the retreat,—these things it is easy to imagine, but those only who have shared the rout and ruin of a beaten army can adequately realize.”<sup>104</sup>

#### FIGHTING CONTINUES AROUND THE BAGGAGE TRAIN

The *carrī* were used here much as the early settlers in the West used a circle of prairie schooners as a defense against Indians. The heavy carts and wagons formed a very serviceable rampart but could easily be set on fire.

Ad multam noctem<sup>105</sup> ad<sup>106</sup> impedīmenta pugnātum est.

<sup>102</sup> alterī . . . alterī; Gr. 823. What are the proper names to which these words refer?

<sup>103</sup> carrus, ī, wagon, cart.

<sup>104</sup> T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. London, Oxford University Press, 1931. p. 56.

<sup>105</sup> ad multam noctem: far into the night.

<sup>106</sup> ad, at.

Nam prō vallō<sup>107</sup> carrōs<sup>108</sup> objecerant, et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla conjiciēbant.

190 Diū in eō locō est pugnātum.

Tandem impedimentīs castrisque nostrī potītī sunt.

#### THE SURVIVORS FLEE

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia centum trīgintā<sup>109</sup> superfuērunt atque per eam tōtam noctem fūgērunt.

In finēs Lingonum<sup>110</sup> diē quārtō<sup>111</sup> pervēnerunt.

#### HEAVY LOSSES DELAY PURSUIT

195 Et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram<sup>112</sup> occīsōrum, nostrī eōs sequī nōn poterant.

Caesar ad Lingonēs<sup>110</sup> nuntiōs misit.

Eōs frūmentō aut aliā rē hostēs adjuvāre vetuit.

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

objiciō, objicere, objēcī, objectus, 3, tr., *throw in the way, place in front.*

conjiciō, conjicere, conjēcī, conjectus, 3, tr., *hurl, throw, cast.*

supersum, superesse, superfuī, intr., *am over, remain, survive (super, over, above + sum).*

<sup>107</sup> prō vallō: *for a rampart, as a rampart.*

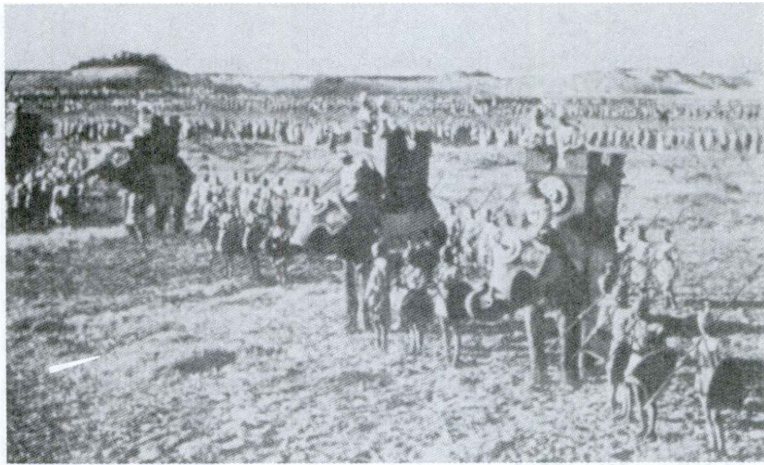
<sup>108</sup> carrus, ī, *wagon, cart.*

<sup>109</sup> centum trīgintā, *one hundred and thirty.*

<sup>110</sup> Lingonēs, Lingonum, *the Lingones (līn'gō nēz).* The survivors of the battle fled northward; see map, page 22.

<sup>111</sup> diē quārtō; Gr. 920. In such calculations the Romans, unlike ourselves, counted the day of the battle as the first day. This expression is therefore equivalent to the English *in three days.*

<sup>112</sup> sepultūra, ae, *burial.* It is estimated that about 100,000 Helvetians perished in this battle. Apparently Caesar also suffered heavily since he delayed pursuit for three days.



—Black Star

#### ACIES ROMANA

In this picture a Roman army is shown advancing into battle. The scene of the battle is laid in northern Africa, where elephants were used much as a modern army uses tanks. Roman legions fought in many different lands, always making full use of whatever instruments of war the country provided.

Post trīduum ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs hostēs sequī coepit.

#### THE HELVETIANS SURRENDER

Helvētiī, omnium rērum inopiā<sup>113</sup> adductī, lēgātōs dē dēditōne 200  
ad eum mīsērunt.

Quī cum ad eum in itinere convēnissent, ad pedēs sē prōjēcērunt

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

trīduum, ī, *three days.*

dēditō, dēditōnis, *surrender, capitulation.* (Many nouns ending in -iō are formed on verb stems; cf. dēdō, *surrender.*)

prōjiciō, prōjicere, prōjēcī, prōjectus, 3, tr., *throw forward, cast.*

---

<sup>113</sup> The Helvetians had lost most of their supplies when their camp was captured, and Caesar had forbidden the Lingones to help them in any way.

suppliciterque<sup>114</sup> locūtī flentēs<sup>115</sup> pācem petīvērunt.

Eōs Caesar suum adventum exspectāre jussit.

205 Eō cum Caesar pervēnisset, obsidēs, arma, servōs poposcit.

#### AN ATTEMPTED ESCAPE

Intereā circiter hominum mīlia sex,<sup>116</sup> sive<sup>117</sup> timōre perterritī, sive<sup>117</sup> spē salutis inductī, primā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī, ad Rhēnum finēsq̄ue Germānōrum contendērunt.

Caesar, cum dē hāc rē certior factus esset, imperāvit<sup>118</sup> eīs quōrum  
210 per finēs ierant ut illōs redūcerent.

Eōs reductōs in numerō hostium habuit.<sup>119</sup>

Reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, per fugīs trādītis, in dēditionem accēpit.

Helvētiōs, Tulingōs,<sup>120</sup> Latobrigōs<sup>121</sup> in finēs suōs revertī jussit.

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

eō, adv., *thither, to that place, there.*

poscō, poscere, poposcī, 3, tr., *ask, demand.*

perterreō, perterrere, perterrui, perterritus, 2, tr., *terrify greatly, frighten thoroughly.* (Per, in compound words, often merely strengthens the meaning. Thus perterreō is a stronger form for terreō).

perfuga, ae, *deserter* (cf. fuga).

<sup>114</sup> *suppliciter*, adv., *humbly.*

<sup>115</sup> *flēo*, *flēre*, *flēvī*, *flētum*, 2, intr., *weep, lament.*

<sup>116</sup> *sex*, *six.*

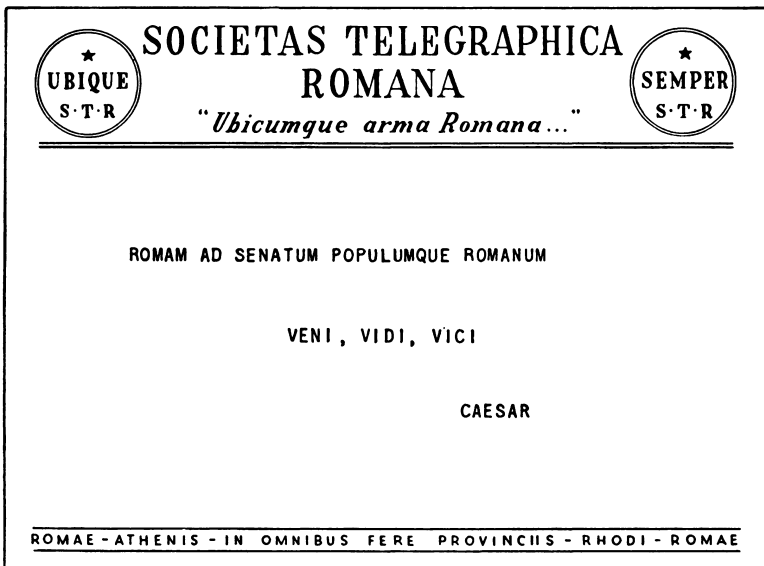
<sup>117</sup> *sive . . . sive*: *either . . . or.*

<sup>118</sup> *imperāvit . . . ut . . . redūcerent*; the *ut*-clause is a noun clause used as the object of *imperō*. Translate by the English infinitive. See Gr. 639.

<sup>119</sup> *Habuit* here means *considered*. Caesar executed the fugitives since they had violated their agreement of surrender.

<sup>120</sup> *Tulingī*, *Tulingōrum*, *the Tulingi* (tú lín'jī).

<sup>121</sup> *Latobrigī*, *Latobrigōrum*, *the Latobrigi* (là tōb'ri jī).



Reports of Caesar's victory over the Helvetians were carried down to Rome by fast courier. Had he lived in the era of the telegraph (or radio) his report might have taken some form like the one shown here. The words of this 'telegraphic' report were used by Caesar to send news of his victory to Rome after he had conquered the king of Pontus in a campaign lasting only five days.

Eis imperāvīt ut<sup>122</sup> oppida quae incenderant restituerent.<sup>123</sup> 215

#### PEACE

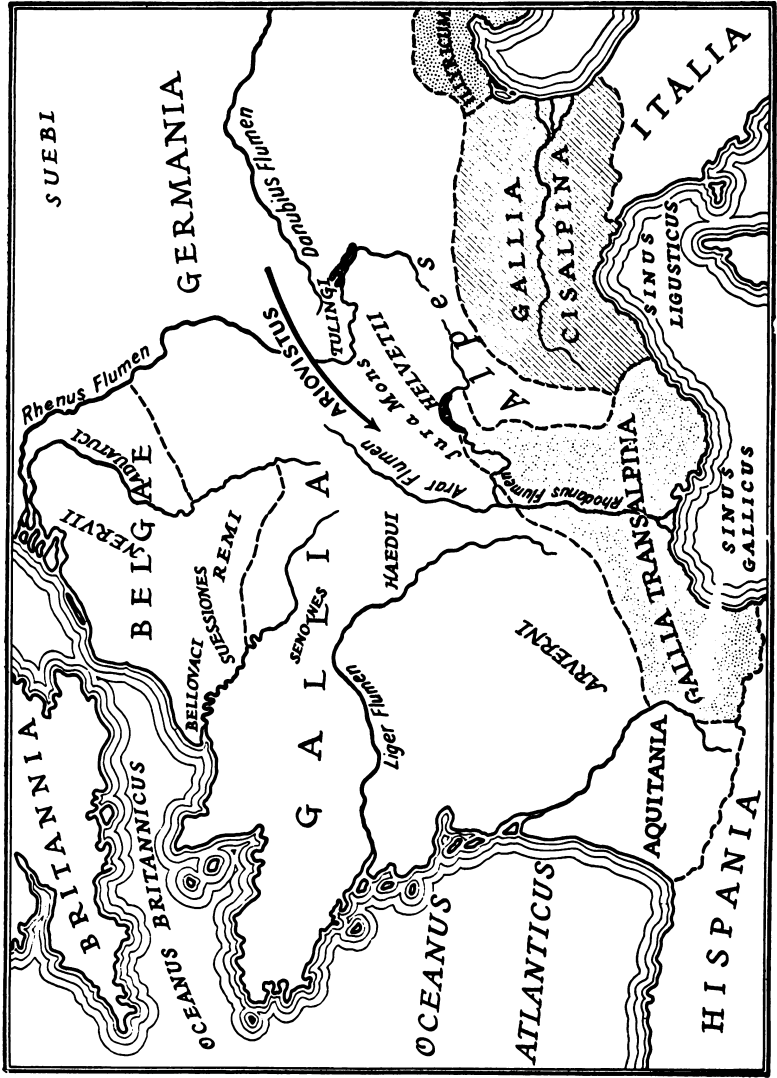
Caesar's victory greatly strengthened the prestige of the pro-Roman parties throughout Gaul. Most of the Gallic nations thought it expedient and diplomatic to cultivate the victorious foreigner. Many of them were genuinely glad that the powerful Helvetians had not obtained a footing in western Gaul.

Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō, tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, p̄ncipēs civitātum, ad Caesarem convēnērunt ut eī grātulārentur.<sup>124</sup>

<sup>122</sup> imperāvīt ut . . . restituerent; Gr. 639.

<sup>123</sup> restitūō, restituere, restitūī, restitūtus, 3, tr., set up again, rebuild, renew.

<sup>124</sup> grātulor, 1, intr.; w. dat., congratulate.



## 2. THE GERMAN PERIL

Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō, principēs civitātum ad Caesarem convēnerunt ut cum eō dē commūnī Gallōrum salūte agerent. Haec ostendēbant. Haeduī et Arvernī<sup>1</sup> inter sē dē imperiō tōtius Galliae diū contendēbant. Arvernī,<sup>1</sup> cum Haeduōs superāre nōn potuissent, Germānōs in Galliam vocāvērunt ut per eōs imperium 5 tōtius Galliae obtinērent. Cum eīs Haeduī saepe armīs contendērunt sed pulsī atque superātī sunt. Germānī autem, rēge Ariovistō,<sup>2</sup> in Galliā mānsērunt, magnā agrī Sēquanōrum parte occupātā, aliōsque Germānōs trāns Rhēnum vocāvērunt. Ariovistus<sup>2</sup> homō barbarus erat; ejūs imperia Galli diūtius sustinēre 10 nōn poterant. Hīs dictīs, ā Caesare tandem et ā populō Rōmānō auxilium rogāvērunt, nam aliam spem habēbant nūllam.

### CAESAR'S ULTIMATUM

The Germans, pushing across the Rhine into the fairer lands of Gaul, evidently intended a permanent conquest. They were a force to be reckoned with, and they were clearly extending their power and their sphere of influence. Caesar, whose future plan of conquest was perhaps already fully formed, could hardly allow such a rival power to remain and grow in Gaul.

He therefore ordered Ariovistus to bring no more Germans across the Rhine, to return the Gallic hostages, and to cease his spoliation of the Haeduans.

### THE CHALLENGE OF ARIOVISTUS

But Ariovistus responded scornfully. "We," he said in effect, "have conquered the Gauls, and we hold our lands by right of arms. By what better right do the Romans claim *their* province

---

<sup>1</sup> Arvernī, Arvernōrum, *the Arverni* (ār vūr'nī), a tribe of central Gaul.

<sup>2</sup> Ariovistus, ī, *Ariovistus* (ar ī ó vīs'tūs), a German king.

in Gaul? What does Caesar purpose in bringing an army into our lands?—for this is our province in Gaul. If he would have peace, let him lead his troops back into the Roman province and leave Gaul to the Germans.”

The challenge of the German king was not an empty gesture. The very aspect of the towering German warriors, so the Gauls reported, struck fear into their enemies. And Ariovistus had under his command an undefeated and not inconsiderable host of these hardened fighters.

### THE BATTLE WITH THE GERMANS

Tamen Caesar cōstituit cum Germānīs dē Galliae imperiō armīs contendere. In agrōs quōs Germānī occupāverant exercitum  
 15 celeriter dūxit ibique cum eīs proelium commisit. Diū ac fortiter pugnātum est. Tandem Germānī, pulsī ac perterritī, in fugam sē dedērunt. Eōrum nōn multī ad flūmen Rhēnum pervēnērunt; flūmen trānsire contendērunt atque ita sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus. Reliquōs omnēs cōsecūtī equitēs nostrī  
 20 interfēcērunt. Ita tandem victī sunt Germānī.

### DISASTROUS RETREAT OF THE SUEBI

Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nuntiātō, Suēbī,<sup>3</sup> quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, in finēs suōs revertī coepērunt. Cum eī quī proximī Rhēnō incolunt Suēbōs<sup>3</sup> perterritōs esse intellēxissent, insecūtī magnum ex eīs numerum occidērunt.

### CAESAR'S PREPARATIONS FOR THE WINTER OF 58 B. C.

25 Caesar, ūnā aestātē<sup>4</sup> duōbus maximīs bellīs cōfectīs, in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dūxit. Hibernīs Labiēnum praefecit. Ipse in Citeriōrem Galliam profectus est.

<sup>3</sup> Suēbī, Suēbōrum, *the Suebi* (swē'bi), a powerful German tribe.

<sup>4</sup> aestās, aestātis, *summer*; ūnā aestātē; ablative of time within which, *Gr.* 922.

## RESULT OF THE WAR

Thus, by expelling the Germans Caesar had effectively brought the whole of Gaul within the Roman sphere of influence and had accepted the Rhine as the natural boundary of the future province of Gaul. Henceforth he was committed to the protection of this frontier; any German aggression west of the Rhine must be considered as an act hostile to Roman power and interest.



*—Courtesy of Paramount Pictures*

TITUS LABIENUS

as a modern actor might portray him—strong, courageous, resourceful—the one man on whose independent judgment and swift action Caesar fully relied.

### 3. CONSPIRACY AMONG THE BELGIANS

Caesar had driven out the Germans and had thus paved the way for the final conquest of Gaul. In the autumn of 58 B. C. he quartered his legions, under command of Labienus, at Vesontio in central Gaul and returned to northern Italy. There he could fulfill his civil duties as governor and maintain, at the same time, close contact with political developments in Rome.

Meanwhile in northeastern Gaul, where dwelt the warlike Belgians, anti-Roman feeling was mounting. Caesar had rid Gaul of the Germans, but now Roman armies were quartered in Gaul.

The eagle of the Roman legions had never penetrated the forests of the Belgians. Let the Helvetians who had surrendered to Roman arms and the Haeduans who had bargained for favor sink into servitude; the undefeated Belgians were free men and would remain free!

#### CAESAR LEARNS OF THE CONSPIRACY

Caesar, cum in Citeriōre Galliā esset, nuntiis litterisque certior factus est omnēs Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Belgae, quī tertiam Galliae partem incolunt, omnium Gallōrum fortissimī sunt atque libertātis glōriaeque cupidissimī. Arbitrābantur, omnī pācātā Galliā, ex- 5  
ercitum Rōmānum ad sē ventūrum esse. Itaque bellum contrā populum Rōmānum parābant ut in eā libertāte quam ā mājōribus accēperant manērent.

#### CAESAR'S COUNTERMEASURES

Hīs litteris nuntiisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in Citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit, et, initā aestāte,<sup>1</sup> Quīntum 10  
Pedium,<sup>2</sup> lēgātum, mīsit quī eās in Galliam Ulteriōrem dūceret.

<sup>1</sup> aestās, aestātis, *summer*.

<sup>2</sup> Quīntus (ī) Pedius (ī), *Quintus Pedius*, a lieutenant in Caesar's army.

Ipse, cum primum<sup>3</sup> pābuli<sup>4</sup> cōpia esse coepisset, ad exercitum contendit. Imperāvit Senonibus<sup>5</sup> reliquisque Gallis quī finitimī Belgīs erant ut ea quae apud Belgās gererentur cognōscerent<sup>6</sup>  
 15 sēque dē his rēbus certiōrem facerent.<sup>6</sup> Hī omnēs nuntiāvērunt cōpiās cōgī et exercitum in ūnum locum convenire. Itaque ipse ad eōs profectus est. Rē frūmentāriā<sup>7</sup> comparātā, ad finēs Belgārum celeriter pervēnit.<sup>8</sup>

#### THE REMI SUBMIT

Eō cum vēnisset, Rēmī,<sup>9</sup> quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt,  
 20 ad eum lēgātōs, nōbilissimōs civitātis, misērunt quī dīcerent sē parātōs esse et obsidēs dare et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō aliisque rēbus adjuvāre neque sē cum reliquīs Belgīs contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāvisse.

#### CAESAR'S DIPLOMACY

The Remi, a Belgic tribe under the overlordship of the Suesiones, had seen an opportunity to gain their freedom through the influence of Caesar. And for his part Caesar welcomed the opportunity to divide his enemies by favoring the Remi and to establish a pro-Roman tribe among the Belgians as he had already done in central Gaul. For there the Haeduans had prospered through Roman favor and had become in consequence valuable allies. This

<sup>3</sup> primum, adv., first.

<sup>4</sup> pābulum, ī, fodder.

<sup>5</sup> Senonēs, Senonum, the Senones (sé nō'nēz), a tribe in central Gaul.

<sup>6</sup> ut . . . cognōscerent . . . facerent; noun clauses after imperāvit, Gr. 637, 639.

<sup>7</sup> rēs (reī) frūmentāria (ae), supply of provisions.

<sup>8</sup> Caesar was maintaining his mastery over a hostile country by small and separated garrisons. His great danger was that revolution might flare up simultaneously throughout Gaul with consequent cutting of his lines of communication, stoppage of supplies, and continued dispersal of his forces. He could therefore run no risks; every stirring of revolt had to be crushed instantly.

<sup>9</sup> Rēmī, Rēmōrum, the Remi (rē'mī), a Belgic tribe.



THE REMI SEND ENVOYS TO CAESAR

manipulation of the internal factions of Gaul was, of course, an essential part of Caesar's diplomatic strategy. Through it he established, in most of the important tribes, a pro-Roman 'fifth column.'

#### THE REPORT OF THE REMI

Rēmī nuntiāvērunt omnēs Belgās in armīs esse et Germānōs quī cis<sup>10</sup> Rhēnum incolant<sup>11</sup> sē cum hīs conjūnxisse. Cum ab eīs 25  
quaereret quae quantaque cīvitatēs in armīs essent, haec reperiēbat:

The leading tribes in the conspiracy were the Suessiones, the Bellovaci, the Nervii, and several German tribes living in the eastern part of Belgium along the Rhine. Together they could put in the field more than 200,000 fighting men and thus outnumber Caesar four to one.

#### CAESAR'S PLAN

But these enemies, though united in the single purpose of opposing the Roman power, were yet rent by internal jealousies and lacked the cohesion of a well-trained army. The Belgians, like all

<sup>10</sup> *cis*, prep. w. acc., *this side of*.

<sup>11</sup> *incolant*; subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, Gr. 665.

the Gauls, were subject to sudden enthusiasms, but they did not have either the tenacity or the organization of the Romans. As a result they failed at the outset to make provision for a flow of supplies adequate for so vast a host. Moreover, the defection of the Remi had already weakened them and the unexpected arrival of Caesar had alarmed and dismayed them. However, although Caesar had the advantage of unity of command and of Roman discipline, he yet did not dare face so strong a force in the open field. He planned first to divide them further. He instructed the Haeduans to invade and plunder the lands of the Bellovaci, hoping thus to draw the latter away from the coalition to the defense of their own homes. He established a strong line of communications with central Gaul through the Remi and placed the Roman forces in a well-fortified camp to wait and watch for a strategic opportunity.

#### CAESAR'S FIRST OFFENSIVE STROKE

At last, he managed to catch a division of the enemy as they were fording a river to cut his line of supplies. His archers and slingers took a terrible toll among the Belgians as they waded and struggled in the water.

#### THE COALITION ARMY DISPERSES

Meanwhile the Belgians were running out of supplies; their mutual distrust was beginning to destroy their unity and the Bellovaci, having heard of the invasion of the Haeduans, were clamoring for defense at home. Discouraged also by their recent losses, they decided therefore to dissolve the coalition and return to their own territories and there await the Roman attack, promising one another mutual aid in event of such an attack. Their departure, during the night, for their homes was, as usual among the undisciplined Gauls, accompanied by great disorder. This was exactly the development which Caesar had waited for and had worked to bring about. Even so, he acted with extreme caution; he could not afford, with his small force, to risk any losses.

## CAESAR ACTS

Hāc rē nuntiātā, Caesar, insidiās<sup>12</sup> veritus, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Primā lūce, rē ab explōrātōribus cōnfirmātā, omnem equitātum mīsīt quī novissimum hostium agmen 30 morārētur.<sup>13</sup> Titum Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus eōs sequī jussit. Hī, novissimōs aggressī et multa mīlia passuum secūtī,<sup>14</sup> magnum numerum eōrum fugientium sine ūllō periculō interfēcērunt. Usque ad occāsum<sup>15</sup> sōlis<sup>16</sup> secūtī, tandem in castra sē recēpērunt. 35

## CONQUEST OF THE SUESSIONES

It was now Caesar's opportunity and, as usual, he lost no time in seizing it. In a forced march he reached Noviodunum, the chief stronghold of the Suessiones, and immediately assaulted it. The defenses, however, held and the Romans began to prepare siege-works.

The enemy contingents from the united force came in during the night, but the Suessiones were so overawed by the Roman preparations that they surrendered without further resistance.

## SURRENDER OF THE BELLOVACI AND AMBIANI

Caesar immediately marched westward to Bratuspantium, the chief town of the Bellovaci; these also at once opened their gates to him. As he approached Samarobriva, the Ambiani, too, surrendered. With his usual political clemency Caesar spared these three tribes and, to strengthen the position of his Gallic allies, told them that he was doing so at the request of the Haeduans.

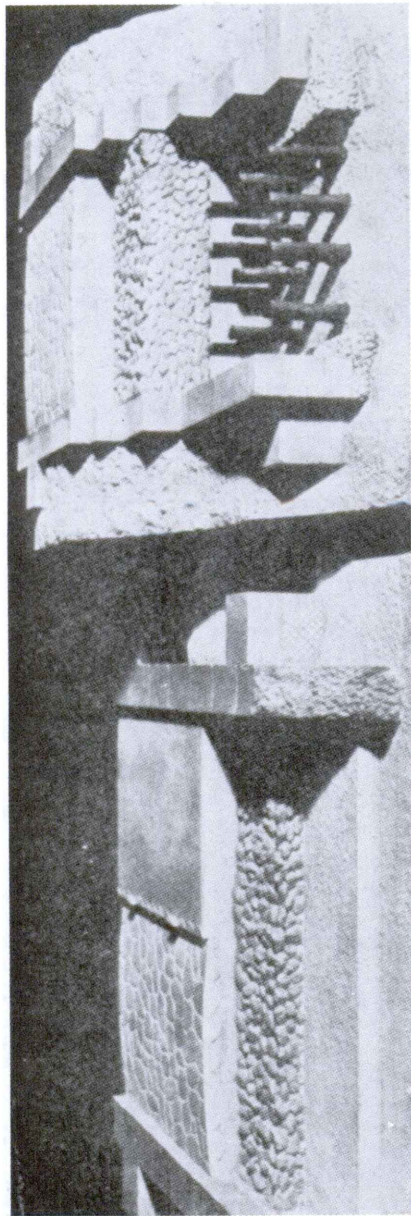
<sup>12</sup> *insidiae, insidiarum, ambush, trick.*

<sup>13</sup> *moror, 1, tr., delay.*

<sup>14</sup> Caesar's cavalry was most effective against a foe in flight. This was the common and most important use of the mounted arm.

<sup>15</sup> *occāsus, ūs, setting.*

<sup>16</sup> *sōl, sōlis, m., sun.*



—Courtesy Istituto Nazionale Luce

#### ROMAN ROAD ENGINEERING

Rapidity of movement is a vital factor in all war. The Roman legions were therefore trained to remarkable endurance in long, forced marches, and their military engineers bound the Roman territories together in a splendid network of roads to facilitate troop movements. When Caesar came into Gaul the province there already had several fine roads, one important one connecting northern Italy with the provinces in Spain. The style of these excellent roads is shown in this model. Many of them have survived to modern times and in some places in Italy are still used as the base of smooth modern highways.

In the days of Hitler's glory the German army, like the legions of old Rome, crisscrossed the Third Reich with the finest system of strategic roads in the world. Italy, too, consciously imitating the engineering traditions of Rome, bound together its African colonies by splendid roads and bridges. An illustration of this road-building project in an Italian publication (*Roman Roads in East Africa*) bore the following legend: "The grandeur of Ancient Rome revived in East Africa by the descendants of Appius Claudius and Flaminius." In old Rome Appius Claudius (312 B. C.) inaugurated the program of road building with the famed Appian Way, and Flaminius (220 B. C.) gave his name to another of the great early roads, the *Via Flaminia* running north from Rome.

He then disarmed the garrisons of their towns and exacted hostages.

### THE NERVII

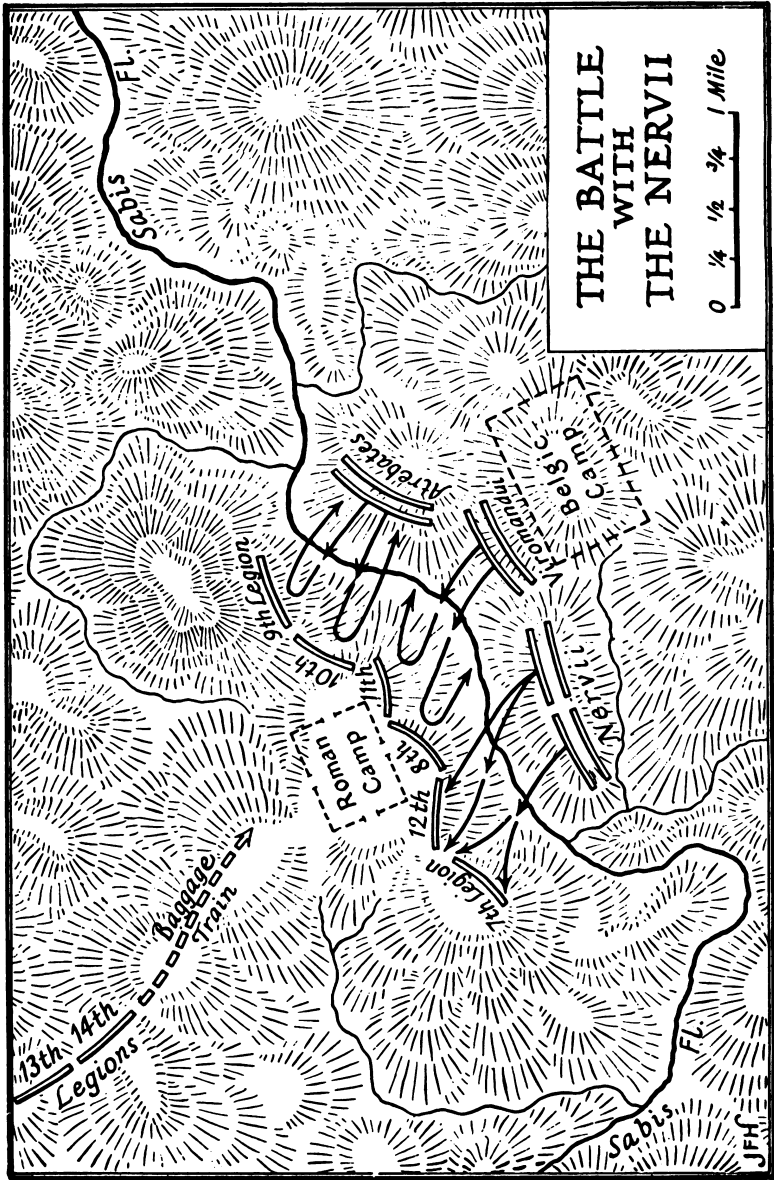
But there remained one unconquered Belgian tribe—the Nervii. These rude warriors, the most courageous and proud of all that region, dwelt among vast forests and marshes in the northeast. They allowed no traders to cross their borders and forbade the importation of wine lest luxury should diminish their courage and enfeeble their strength. For the humble submission of the Suesiones and the Bellovaci, the Nervii had only the scorn of proud warriors for the weak. They vowed resistance to the last man.

### CAESAR INVADES THE TERRITORY OF THE NERVII

Caesar at once advanced to their territory. At the end of a three days' march into their land, he learned that the river Sambre was some ten miles away and that beyond it the Nervii were encamped. The Viromandui and the Atrebates had joined them and another tribe, the Aduatuci, were marching from the east to share their fortune. Caesar sent on at once a detachment to choose a camp site on the left bank of the river opposite the enemy.

### THE PLAN OF THE NERVII

Meanwhile, during the night, prisoners had escaped from Caesar's camp to the Nervii. These told the Nervii that on the march each Roman legion was separated from the following one by a long baggage train. The Nervii therefore saw that it would be easy to attack as soon as the first legion came onto the camping ground while the baggage train would hinder the following forces. This would be easier as the Nervii had crisscrossed their lands by strong hedges of intertwined bushes and trees as a constant protection against plundering cavalry. The hill which had been chosen for the Roman camp site sloped down to the river; beyond the river an open stretch of bank rose gradually to the edge of a dense forest.



# THE BATTLE WITH THE NERVII

0 1/4 1/2 3/4 1 Mile

13th 14th Legions

Baggage Train

7th Legion

10th Legion

Roman Camp

8th Legion

12th Legion

Arrebatas

Belgic Camp

Roman Camp

Nervii

7th Legion

Sabis Fl.

Sabis Fl.

J.F.C.

In eīs silvīs hostēs sē continēbant; in apertō locō nōn multī equitēs vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō<sup>17</sup> pedum circiter trium.<sup>18</sup>

#### CAESAR REACHES THE RIVER

Praemissō<sup>19</sup> equitātū, Caesar cum omnibus cōpiīs celeriter sequēbātur. Ratiō autem agminis alia erat quam Belgae Nervii<sup>40</sup> nuntiāverant. Nam, quod hostibus appropinquābat, Caesar sex<sup>20</sup> legiōnēs expeditās<sup>21</sup> dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocāverat; inde duae legiōnēs quae nūper cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant. Equitēs nostrī, flūmen trāsgressī,<sup>22</sup> cum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt. Illī sē in<sup>45</sup> silvās ad suōs recipiēbant, atque rūsus<sup>23</sup> ex silvīs in nostrōs equitēs impetum faciēbant.

Meanwhile the legionaries were dispersed and occupied in the preparation of the camp, some digging trenches, others cutting wood in the surrounding fields. Caesar neglected to keep a part of his force under arms. At last the head of the baggage train appeared. The Nervii, concealed in the forest opposite, had made this the signal for attack.

#### THE ATTACK

“Suddenly they darted forth from the wood and came pouring down the open; their rush swept away the terrified cavalry; now they were across the river and racing up the slope; and now they fell upon the half-formed line.

“The confusion was overwhelming. From the moment when the onrushing host was seen there were hardly ten minutes for prep-

<sup>17</sup> altitūdō, altitūdinis, *depth*.

<sup>18</sup> pedum . . . trium; descriptive genitive, Gr. 695.

<sup>19</sup> praemittō, praemittere, praemīsi, praemissus, 3, tr., *send ahead*.

<sup>20</sup> sex, *six*.

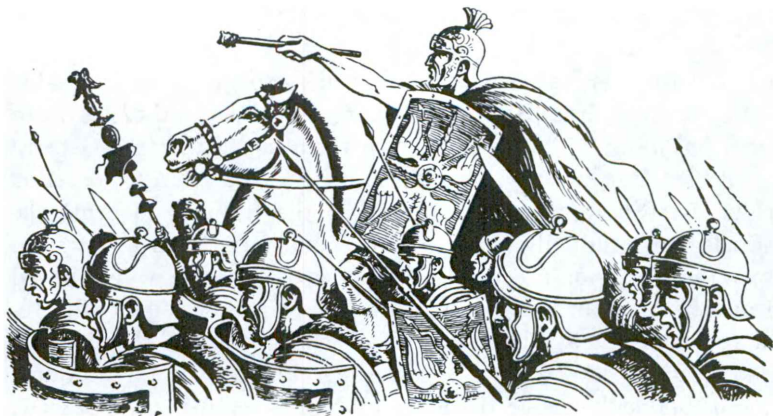
<sup>21</sup> expeditus, a, um, *unimpeded, ready for action*.

<sup>22</sup> trāsgredior, trāsgredī, trāsgressus sum, 3, tr., *cross, cross over*.

<sup>23</sup> rūsus, adv., *again*.

aration. The Romans flung aside their tools. Caesar had to give all his orders in a breath. The red battle-ensign was quickly hoisted over his tent. The blast of the trumpet recalled the men who were working at the further side of the camp, while messengers ran to fetch those who had scattered far afield. They had not a moment even to cram on their helmets or pull the coverings off their shields. The generals were obliged to act without waiting for orders; and Caesar was glad that he had forbidden them to leave their respective legions while the camp was being made. He could not direct them; for the hedges which crossed the field obstructed his view. Want of time as well as the nature of the ground prevented them from forming a regular line of battle: along the brow of the hill a number of isolated combats were beginning at once; and all that could be done was to make each legion face its immediate assailants. Disciplined, and self-reliant from the experience which they had gained, the soldiers instinctively grasped the situation: they did not trouble themselves to join their respective companies, but one after another, as they hastened up, they fell into the ranks by the standards nearest them. Hurrying down at haphazard to cheer them on, Caesar found himself close to the left of the line. There was the 10th,—his favourite legion. ‘Keep cool, men,’ he cried, ‘and remember the honour of the legion. Stand up against that rush!’ He had no time to say more; for the enemy were within a javelin’s cast and, as he hurried on, both sides were engaged.

“Hurling their javelins, the 10th and, on their left, the 9th fell, sword in hand, upon the Atrebates, who, panting from their headlong rush, soon gave way. Hunted down the slope, they plunged into the stream, but the Romans dashed after, sword in hand; and when the survivors clambered up the further bank and tried to rally, fell upon them again and chased them up the hill. At the same time the 11th and 8th drove the Viromandui from the front of the camp right down to the water’s edge. But the very success of these four legions was disastrous to their comrades—the 12th and 7th—on the right. The left and front of the camp were ex-



CAESAR PUSHES HIS WAY TO THE FRONT

posed; . . . and the Nervii, compacted in one mighty column, climbed the steep bluff, swarmed up the heights, and while some outflanked the two legions on their right, the rest pressed on for the defenceless camp. The beaten cavalry came full upon them and again took to flight: the officers' servants, who had gone out to plunder, looked back, and ran for their lives: the baggage-drivers, who were coming up, scattered in all directions, shrieking with terror; and a body of horse from the Treveri, who formed part of the auxiliary force, rode off homewards to announce Caesar's defeat.

"Caesar saw it all as he made his way from the left to the right wing. The men of the 12th, who had never before fought in a pitched battle, were huddled together so closely that they could hardly use their swords; and nearly every officer was either killed or wounded. . . . Sextius Baculus, the chief centurion of the legion, was so weakened by loss of blood that he could no longer stand. From the rear ranks men were slinking away to escape the showers of missiles. There were no reserves; and the numbers of the enemy were inexhaustible. Fresh swarms kept pressing up the hill, and closing in on either flank. Seizing a shield from a man in the rearmost rank, Caesar pushed his way through to the front: he called to his centurions by name:

he told the men to open up their ranks—so they would be able to use their swords better—and charge. At the sound of his voice their spirits rose; and each man of them hoped that the General would see how bravely he could fight. But the 7th also, on their right, were hard pressed. Caesar told the tribunes to bring the two legions gradually closer together, and form them up so as to face the enemy on every side. And now, as the men were relieved from the dread of being attacked in the rear, they fought with renewed confidence. The two legions which guarded the baggage had heard of the fight, and were marching up at their utmost speed. Suddenly above the ridge of Neuf-Mesnil they appeared; and presently the 10th, dispatched by Labienus, recrossed the river, hurried up the hill-side, and threw themselves upon the enemy's rear. The effect of their appearance was electrical. Even the wounded leaned on their shields, and plied their swords: the scattered camp-followers plucked up courage and turned upon the enemy; while the cavalry did all they could to atone for their flight. The Nervii in their turn were hemmed in. But in their last agony they made good their proud boast. Man by man, beneath the javelin and the thrust of the short sword, their front ranks fell. Higher rose the heap of prostrate bodies; and leaping on to them, the survivors snatched up the fallen javelins and flung them back, till they too fell; and all was still.

“So ended this wild fight,—a soldiers' battle, but withal the battle of a great man. Within an hour it was over, fought and wellnigh lost and won.”<sup>24</sup>

#### THE FATE OF THE ADUATUCI

The Aduatuci had not arrived in time for the battle. Hearing of the defeat of the Nervii, they returned home. Caesar followed and laid siege to their stronghold on the Meuse. After a brief resistance they too surrendered, but during the next night they

---

<sup>24</sup> T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. London, Oxford University Press, 1931. pp. 77-80.

violated their pledge and treacherously attacked the Romans. But Caesar was prepared for treachery. They were decisively defeated. To them, therefore, Caesar showed no mercy—fifty-three thousand of them, men, women, and children, were sold into slavery. Thus, disastrously, ended the Belgian conspiracy.

## 4. DANGER IN THE ALPS

### CAESAR LEAVES GALBA IN WINTER QUARTERS

Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar,<sup>1</sup> Servium Galbam<sup>2</sup> cum legiōne duodecimā<sup>3</sup> et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs,<sup>4</sup> Veragrōs<sup>5</sup> Sedūnōsque<sup>6</sup> mīsīt, quī ā finibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō<sup>7</sup> et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Nam propter hās gentēs mercātōrēs magnō cum periculō per Alpēs hōc itinere<sup>8</sup> ibant.

### PROTECTION OF THE TRADE ROUTE

No military power can ignore the commercial advantages of its own country. These tribes had been levying tribute on the merchants passing through their country and were not averse to occasional brigandage. Caesar therefore determined to open up this route and make it permanently safe for the Roman commercial agents. He therefore instructed Galba to set up winter quarters in these regions if it appeared to him necessary.

### SUCCESS OF GALBA'S CAMPAIGN

Galba—secundīs proeliīs factīs castellisque<sup>9</sup> eōrum expugnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā—cōstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus<sup>4</sup> collocāre, et ipse cum re-

<sup>1</sup> In the autumn of 57 B. C.

<sup>2</sup> Servius (ī) Galba (ae), *Servius Galba*, one of those who later assassinated Caesar in the senate house at Rome.

<sup>3</sup> duodecimus, a, um, *twelfth*. This legion had suffered heavy losses in the battle with the Nervii.

<sup>4</sup> Nantuātēs, Nantuātum, *the Nantuates* (nān tū ā'tēz).

<sup>5</sup> Veragrī, Veragrōrum, *the Veragri* (vēr'ā grī).

<sup>6</sup> Sedūnī, Sedūnōrum, *the Seduni* (sē dū'nī).

<sup>7</sup> lacus (ūs) Lemannus (ī), *Lake Geneva*.

<sup>8</sup> hōc itinere; the road here led from Valais over the Great Saint Bernard Pass into Italy.

<sup>9</sup> castellum, ī, *fort*.



THE ROMANS FORTIFY OCTODURUS

liquīs ejūs legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō<sup>10</sup> Veragrōrum<sup>11</sup> quī appellā- 10  
tur Octodūrus<sup>12</sup> hiemāre. Hic vīcus<sup>10</sup> altissimīs montibus undique  
continētur et in duās partēs flūmine dīviditur. Itaque alteram  
ejūs vīcī<sup>10</sup> partem Gallīs concessit; alteram, ab eīs relictam, co-  
hortibus dedit. Eum locum vallō fossāque mūnivit.

#### SUDDEN DANGER

Post multōs diēs Galba per explōrātōrēs certior factus est 15  
omnēs ex eā parte vīcī<sup>10</sup> quam Gallīs concesserat fūgisse, montēs-  
que quibus vīcus<sup>10</sup> continēbātur ā maximō Gallōrum numerō  
tenēri.

Many causes had induced the mountaineers to resume the struggle. Galba had only a part of a legion with him and from this small force detachments had been sent out for provisions and had not yet returned. Moreover, the Gauls relied on the advantages of ground, for they thought that the Romans would not be able to withstand their attack as they rushed down from the mountains hurling their javelins into the camp. Besides, they were grieved that their children were hostages in Roman hands,

<sup>10</sup> vīcus, *i*, village.

<sup>11</sup> Veragrī, Veragrōrum, the Veragri.

<sup>12</sup> Octodūrus, *i*, Octodurus, a village. See map on page 34.

and they feared that the troops were there not merely to protect the trade route but to take permanent possession of their lands.

### A COUNCIL OF WAR

His rēbus nuntiātīs, Galba intellēxit perīculum suīs esse maximum. Nam mūnitiōnēs nōndum perfectae<sup>13</sup> sunt neque cōpia frūmentī in castris erat. Dēditiōne enim factā atque obsidibus datīs, Galba dē novō bellō nōn timuerat. Itaque centuriōnēs tribūnique mīlitum in concilium celeriter convēnērunt.

In eō conciliō omnēs intellēxērunt sē in maximō salūtis perīculō esse. Vidēbant enim jam omnia ferē superiōra loca ā magnō hostium numerō complēta esse. Intellēxērunt sē neque auxilia exspectāre posse neque frūmentī cōpiam habēre.

[NOTE TO THE STUDENT. Galba's situation is now clear to you: Caesar is far away in Italy; the rest of the Roman army is distantly scattered in garrisons throughout Gaul; no help can be expected; provisions are low and cannot be replenished. What would you do, were you Galba, surrounded and outnumbered, bearing the responsibility for a Roman legion and the honor of the Roman name?]

### THE DECISION

Itaque prope<sup>14</sup> jam dēspērātā<sup>15</sup> salūte, nōnnullī arbitrābantur oportēre sē, impedimentīs relictīs, ēruptiōne<sup>16</sup> factā, statim ad salūtem contendere. Tandem in conciliō cōstituērunt castra dēfendere.

### THE ATTACK

The Romans had but a brief time to prepare, and then the enemy were attacking, hurling down stones and javelins from

<sup>13</sup> perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectus, 3, tr., *complete, finish*.

<sup>14</sup> prope, adv., *almost*.

<sup>15</sup> dēspērō, 1, tr., *despair of*.

<sup>16</sup> ēruptiō, ēruptiōnis, *sortie, sally*.

the heights upon the open camp. At first the Romans, true to their traditions, resisted vigorously, but the Gauls were able to send in fresh troops to relieve their fighting men while the Romans, because of their small numbers, stayed continuously in the struggle. Even the wounded fought on till their strength was gone.

#### A LAST HOPE

After six hours of fighting, the Romans were nearing exhaustion. It was only a question of time before their resistance would end.

At this point the senior centurion and others persuaded Galba that their one hope was to make a surprise sortie from the gates. Galba therefore gave orders that the men should stand quietly on the defensive for a short time to rest and should prepare for a last desperate stroke.

#### THE SORTIE

Militēs quod jussī sunt faciēbant, et, cum subitō<sup>17</sup> ex omnibus portīs<sup>18</sup> impetum in Gallōs fēcissent, hostēs, perterritī, sustinēre nōn potuerunt. Ita commūtātā fortunā, nostrī magnum hostium numerum interfēcērunt; reliquōs territōs in fugam dedērunt. 35 Omnibus hostium cōpiīs pulsīs, nostrī sē in castra recēpērunt.

#### GALBA WITHDRAWS

But the danger to his small garrison still remained and Galba had no mind to tempt fortune again.

Itaque hōc periculō atque inopiā frūmentī permōtus, posterō diē,<sup>19</sup> omnibus ejūs vīcī<sup>20</sup> aedificiīs<sup>21</sup> incēnsīs, in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac, nullō hoste prohibente, legiōnem in Nan-

<sup>17</sup> *subitō*, adv., *suddenly*.

<sup>18</sup> The camp had four gates.

<sup>19</sup> *posterus*, a, um, *following, next*; *posterō diē*; ablative of time when, Gr. 920.

<sup>20</sup> *vīcus*, ī, *village*.

<sup>21</sup> *aedificium*, ī, *building*.

40 tuātēs,<sup>22</sup> inde in Allobrogēs, quī in prōvinciā incolunt, perdūxit  
ibique in hibernīs collocāvit.

Thus, for once, the Romans could not maintain their position.  
But they were to return.

---

<sup>22</sup> Nantuātēs, Nantuātum, *the Nantuates*.

## 5. REVOLT ALONG THE SEACOAST

### INTRODUCTION

The fire of patriotism and the memory of freedom yet lived in the Celts of Gaul, and, off on the rugged coasts of Brittany, the Veneti had no mind to submit tamely to the foreign yoke. And for Caesar there was now no turning back: he must follow out his imperialistic policies to their conclusion or else withdraw from Gaul entirely. Every opponent must be speedily crushed; every defeat speedily repaired.

Multis bellis confectis, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis,<sup>1</sup> Caesar pacatam esse Galliam existimabat.

Itaque, inita hieme, in Illyricum<sup>2</sup> profectus est, nam eas quoque nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat.

Subitum autem bellum in Gallia ortum est.

5

Ejus belli haec fuit causa.

---

### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsus**, 3, tr., *drive out*.

**hiems, hiemis**, *winter*.

**nātiō, nātiōnis**, *tribe, people*.

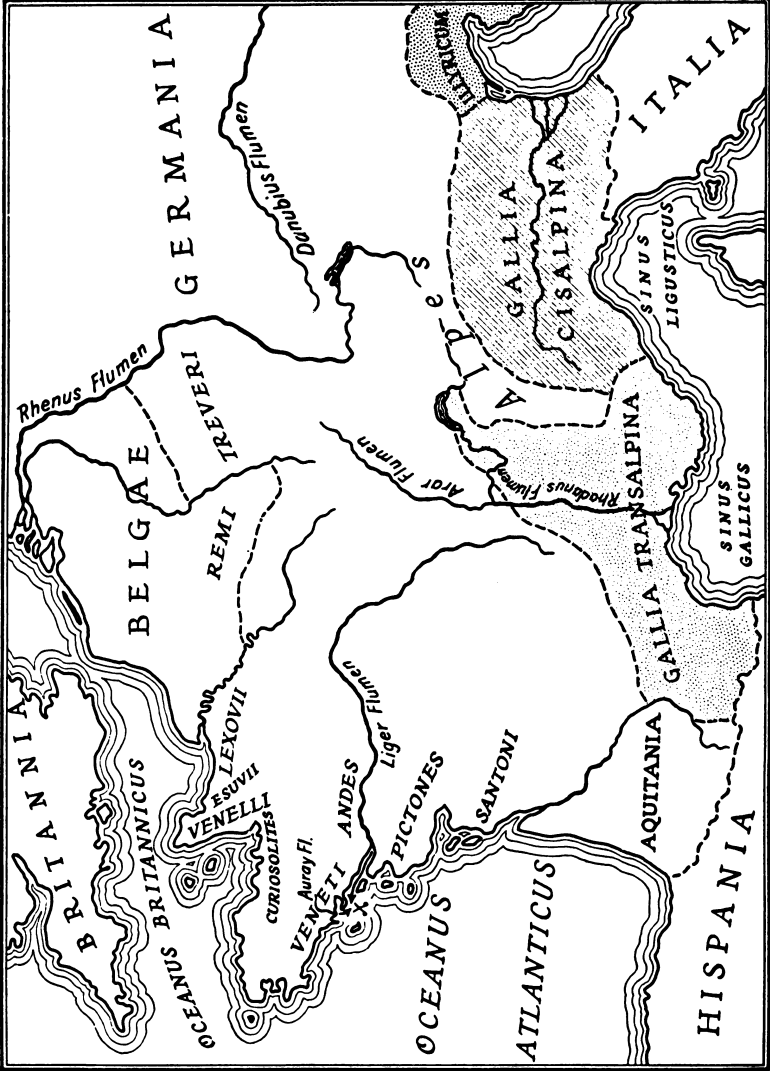
**regiō, regiōnis**, *quarter, region, territory*.

**subitus, a, um**, *sudden, unexpected*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Sedunī, Sedunōrum, *the Seduni* (sé dū'nī), an Alpine tribe.

<sup>2</sup> Illyricum, ī, *Illyricum* (i lir'ī kum), a region along the northeastern coast of the Adriatic Sea, also under Caesar's governorship.



Pūblius Crassus cum legiōne septimā<sup>3</sup> proximus Ōceanō in Andibus<sup>4</sup> hiemābat, sed in hīs locīs erat inopia frūmentī.

Itaque praefectōs tribūnōsque militum complūrēs in finitimās civitātēs frūmentī causā dimisit; quō in numerō est Titus<sup>5</sup> Terrasidius<sup>5</sup> missus in Esuviōs,<sup>6</sup> Mārcus Trebius Gallus<sup>7</sup> in Curiosolitēs,<sup>8</sup> Quīntus Velānius<sup>9</sup> cum Titō Siliō<sup>10</sup> in Venetōs.<sup>11</sup>

### THE SEA POWER OF THE VENETI

Hūjus est civitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās,

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

Pūblius (ī) Crassus (ī), *Publius Crassus*, a lieutenant on the immediate staff of Caesar.

ōceanus, ī, *the ocean*.

praefectus, ī, *commander, officer, captain*.

complūrēs, complūra, *several, many*.

Venetī, Venetōrum, *the Veneti* (vē'nĕ'tī), the most important tribe of the sea-coast, instigators and leaders of the revolt.

amplus, a, um, *large, splendid, magnificent*.

ōra (ae) maritima (ae), *seacoast*.

nāvis, nāvis, *ship*.

<sup>3</sup> septimus, a, um, *seventh*.

<sup>4</sup> Andēs, Andium, *the Andes* (ān'dĕz), a Gallic tribe north of the Loire.

<sup>5</sup> Titus (ī) Terrasidius (ī), *Titus Terrasidius* (tĕr'à sīd'ī ūs), a Roman officer.

<sup>6</sup> Esuviī, Esuviōrum, *the Esuvii* (ĕ sū'vī ī), a tribe on the northern coast.

<sup>7</sup> Mārcus (ī) Trebius (ī) Gallus (ī), *Marcus Trebius Gallus* (gāl'ūs), a Roman officer.

<sup>8</sup> Curiosolitēs, Curiosolitum, *the Curiosolites* (cū rī ó sōl'ī tĕz), a tribe on the northern coast.

<sup>9</sup> Quīntus (ī) Velānius (ī), *Quintus Velanius* (vé lā'nī ūs), a Roman officer.

<sup>10</sup> Titus (ī) Silius (ī), *Titus Silius* (sīl'ī ūs), a Roman officer.

<sup>11</sup> It was customary for the legions to live off the country in which they were quartered. The rapid and efficient means of transportation, by which today we can keep a constant stream of supplies flowing to armies operating in distant

15 quibus in Britanniam nāvīgāre cōsuērunt,<sup>12</sup> et scientiā<sup>13</sup> atque ūsū nauticārum<sup>14</sup> rērum reliquōs superant.

THE VENETI SEIZE THE ROMAN ENVOYS

Ab hīs factum est initium bellī.

Nam retinuērunt Sīlium<sup>15</sup> et Velānium.<sup>16</sup>

Per eōs enim suōs sē obsidēs receptūrōs esse exīstimābant.

20 Finitimī quoque, Venetōrum auctōritāte adductī, eādem dē causā Trebium<sup>17</sup> Terrasidiumque<sup>18</sup> retinuērunt et, celeriter missis lēgātīs, per suōs prīncipēs inter sē conjūrāvērunt.

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**Britannia**, ae, *Britain, England.*

**nāvīgō**, 1, intr., *sail, navigate.*

**cōsuēvī**, cōsuētus, 3, tr. and intr.; w. infin., *have accustomed, have become accustomed, am accustomed.* (Present tenses of cōsuēvī are not common, but note that the perfect can have a PRESENT MEANING and the pluperfect a perfect meaning.)

**ūsus**, ūs, *use, experience, skill.*

**initium**, ī, *beginning.*

**īdem**, eadem, *idem, same.*

ports, did not exist. Naturally, the requisitions of grain were resented by the local tribes. Besides, the Veneti, as the leading maritime tribe, had a monopoly of the commerce with Britain. They had heard that Caesar intended to invade that island, and, consequently, they feared Roman trade would supersede their own.

<sup>12</sup> cōsuērunt; shortened form for cōsuēvērunt, Gr. 1024.

<sup>13</sup> scientia, ae, *knowledge.*

<sup>14</sup> nauticus, a, um, *nautical, naval.*

<sup>15</sup> Sīlius, ī, *Silius*, a Roman officer.

<sup>16</sup> Velānius, ī, *Velanius*, a Roman officer.

<sup>17</sup> Trebius, ī, *Trebius*, a Roman officer.

<sup>18</sup> Terrasidius, ī, *Terrasidius*, a Roman officer.

Reliquās cīvitātēs sollicitāvērunt<sup>19</sup> ut in eā libertāte quam ā mājōribus accēpissent<sup>20</sup> permanērent.

Omni ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, lēgātōs 25 ad Pūblium Crassum mīsērunt.

Lēgātī, "Sī vīs tuōs recipere," inquit, "obsidēs ad nōs remitte!"

#### CRASSUS REPORTS TO CAESAR

Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus est.

Nāvēs longās<sup>21</sup> aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī,<sup>22</sup> quod in Ōceanum fluit, rēmīgēs<sup>23</sup> ex prōvinciā comparārī, nautās cōgī jussit. 30

"Throughout his proconsulate Caesar was in a position different from that of a modern viceroy, who, if his work is almost beyond his strength, may securely concentrate upon it all the power of his mind. He was ever obliged to look back towards Rome, to look forward to the uncertain but stormy future, when he would have

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**permaneō, permanēre, permānsī, permānsū, 2, intr., remain, stay, persist (per + maneō).**

**sententia, ae, opinio, vote.**

**aedificō, 1, tr., build, construct (cf. edifice).**

<sup>19</sup> sollicitō, 1, tr., stir up.

<sup>20</sup> accēpissent; a subordinate clause in implied indirect discourse, Gr. 665, 675. Translate by the English indicative.

<sup>21</sup> A Roman warship was long and narrow, being built for speed; hence it was called *nāvis longa*. The transports (*nāvēs onerāriāe*) were shorter and wider. The warships had a mast and sail but in battle were maneuvered by rowers. The prow of a warship was armed with a metal beak (the *rōstrum*) with which the enemy ships could be rammed. The fighting was done by regular soldiers from the legions and the Romans attempted, by grappling the enemies' ships, to board them and carry on the fight as on land.

<sup>22</sup> *Liger, Ligeris* (abl. -ī), *the Loire* (lwār), a river.

<sup>23</sup> *rēmex, rēmigis, rower, oarsman.*

to struggle for political supremacy; and whenever an enemy attempted to weaken his position, he was obliged to parry the blow. . . . Cicero manifested an inclination to oppose him; and he had reason to fear that Pompey would join Cicero. His term of office would expire in about two years, on the 1st of March, 54 B. C. If he were recalled then, his work in Gaul would be left unfinished; and he would go back, too soon,—to chaos or civil war. From Illyricum he had returned to Ravenna where the elder Crassus met him. Hearing of Cicero's measures, he moved southward, about the middle of April, to Luca, and invited Pompey to come thither as his guest. At this little town the fortunes of the world were decided. Caesar offered terms of such startling liberality that an agreement was come to at once. It was arranged that his term of office should be prolonged for another five years, and that Pompey and Crassus should exert their influence with the Senate to secure to him the right of increasing his legions to ten, and of charging the state-chest with the pay of those which he had raised on his own responsibility."<sup>24</sup>

Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātis, ipse, cum primum per annū tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

#### THE VENETI PREPARE TO RESIST

Venetī reliquaeque civitātēs, dē Caesaris adventū certiōrēs factī, bellum parāre et maximē ea quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent  
35 parāre cōstituērunt.

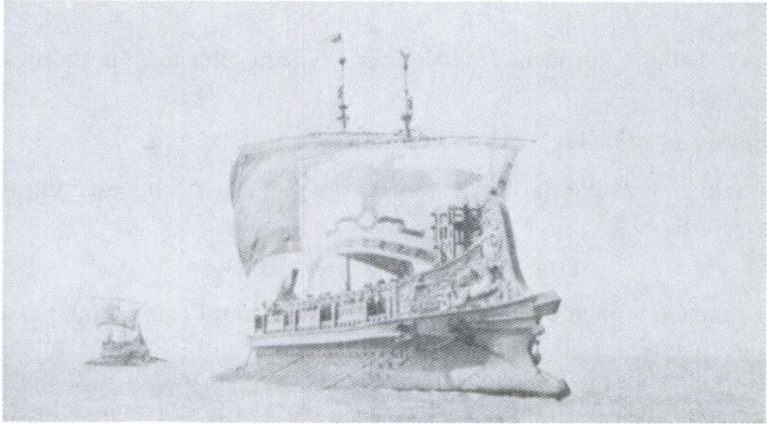
Multum autem nātūrā locī cōfidēbant.

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

annus, ī, year.

cōfidō, cōfidere, cōfīsus sum, 3, intr.; w. abl., *trust, hope, rely on*. (Note that cōfidō is *deponent* in the perfect tenses, e. g., cōfīsus sum, *I relied on*.)

<sup>24</sup>T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. London, Oxford University Press, 1931. p. 88.



—Courtesy of Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer

#### A MEDITERRANEAN 'NAVIS LONGA'

A similar or perhaps even simpler type of warship was used by Caesar in his campaign on the Atlantic seaboard. The ship is what is known as a galley, which is a technical term for a vessel using both sails and oars. A galley with three rows of oars was called a trireme. The oars were often manned by slaves or captives. Notice the *turrus* in the prow. Even such structures as this, Caesar tells us, did little to reduce the overshadowing superiority in height of the ocean-going vessels of the Veneti.

“The coast of the Morbihan was pierced by long estuaries and broken by numerous inlets, which would greatly hinder the progress of an invading army. Little corn was grown in those parts; and the granaries had been emptied to supply the forts. Want of food therefore must soon force the Romans to beat a retreat; and, if the worst came to the worst, those born sailors knew that they could take to the stout ships which had weathered so many storms; while the frail Roman vessels would be sure to run aground among the shoals, or to founder in the tempestuous seas that buffeted the rock-bound shore.”<sup>25</sup>

Hīs initīs cōsiliīs, oppida mūnīvērunt; frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida contulērunt; nāvēs in Venetiam,<sup>26</sup> ubi Caesarem primum

<sup>25</sup> T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, pp. 89-90.

<sup>26</sup> Venetia, ae, *Venetia* (vē nē'shī ā), the country of the Veneti.

esse bellum gestūrum existimābant, quam plūrimās potuērunt  
40 coēgērunt.

Sociōs ad id bellum multōs finitimōs sibi adjūnxērunt.

Auxilia ex Britannīā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessivērunt.

#### THE IMPORTANCE OF THE WAR

Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī<sup>27</sup> quās suprā ostendimus; sed  
45 tamen multa Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant—injūriae retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō<sup>28</sup> facta post dēditionem, dēfectiō<sup>29</sup> datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum conjūratiō—nē reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur.

Itaque, cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre  
50 et ad bellum celeriter incitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā libertātī studēre et condiōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs inter sē conjūrārent,<sup>30</sup> exercitum lātius distribuere cōstituit.<sup>31</sup>

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

adjungō, adjungere, adjūnxī, adjūctus, 3, tr., *join to, add, unite.*

arcessō, arcessere, arcessivī, arcessitus, 3, tr., *summon.*

difficultās, difficultātis, *difficulty, trouble.*

suprā, adv., *above.*

licet, licēre, licuit, 2, intr.; w. dat. of person; acc. w. infin., *it is allowed, it is permitted.*

rēs (rērum) novae (ārum), *revolution.*

condiciō, condiōnis, *condition, state, agreement; (pl.) terms.*

ōdī, ōdisse, tr., *hate; perfect tense with present meaning, Gr. 443.*

distribuō, distribuere, distribuī, distribūtus, 3, tr., *distribute.*

<sup>27</sup> bellī gerendī: *of waging war; gerundive construction, Gr. 870.*

<sup>28</sup> rebelliō, rebelliōnis, *renewal of war, revolt.*

<sup>29</sup> dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, *desertion, rebellion.*

<sup>30</sup> priusquam . . . conjūrārent: *before . . . (they) should conspire; Gr. 567.*

<sup>31</sup> The great danger was that the courageous action of the Veneti might throw all of Gaul into revolt. This would put Caesar's small forces in a critical position

## STRATEGIC DISTRIBUTION OF GARRISONS

Itaque Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum, in Trēverōs,<sup>32</sup> quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mīsīt. 55

Huic mandāvit ut Rēmōs<sup>33</sup> reliquōsque Belgās adīret atque in officiō continēret, Germānōsque, quī auxiliō<sup>34</sup> ā Belgīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnārentur,<sup>35</sup> prohibēret.

Pūblium Crassum cum cohortibus duodecim<sup>36</sup> et magnō numerō 60 equitātūs in Aquītāniam<sup>37</sup> proficīscī jussit, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mitterentur ac tantae nātiōnēs conjungerentur.

Quīntum Titūrium Sabīnum, lēgātum, cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs,<sup>38</sup> Curiosolitēs,<sup>39</sup> Lexoviōsque<sup>40</sup> mīsīt quī eam manum distīnēret.<sup>41</sup> 65

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**officiū**, ī, *service, allegiance, duty.*

**Quīntus (ī) Titūrius (ī) Sabīnus (ī)**, *Quintus Titurius Sabinus* (sā bī'nūs), a lieutenant on Caesar's staff.

**manus**, ūs, f., *hand, troop, band.*

<sup>32</sup> Trēverī, Trēverōrum, *the Treveri* (trēv'ē rī).

<sup>33</sup> Rēmī, Rēmōrum, *the Remi* (rē'mī).

<sup>34</sup> auxiliō; dative of purpose, Gr. 729.

<sup>35</sup> sī . . . cōnārentur: *if . . . they should try.*

<sup>36</sup> duodecim, *twelve.*

<sup>37</sup> Aquītānia, ae, *Aquitania* (āk wī tā'nī ā).

<sup>38</sup> Venellī, Venellōrum, *the Venelli* (vé nē'lī).

<sup>39</sup> Curiosolitēs, Curiosoliturum, *the Curiosolites.*

<sup>40</sup> Lexovī, Lexovīōrum, *the Lexovii* (leks ō'vī ī).

<sup>41</sup> distīnēō. distīnēre, distīnuī, distētus, 2, tr., *keep apart, divide, isolate.*

Decimum Brūtum classī nāvibusque, quās ex Pictonibus<sup>42</sup> et Santonīs<sup>43</sup> reliquisque pācātis regiōnibus convenīre jusserat, prae-fēcit, et, cum primum possit, in Venetōs proficīscī jussit.

Ipse eō cum reliquīs<sup>44</sup> cōpiīs contendit.

#### THE DIFFICULTIES OF THE CAMPAIGN

“The positions of the strongholds were generally of one kind. They were set at the end of tongues and promontories, so as to allow no approach on foot, when the tide had rushed in from the sea—which regularly happens every twelve hours—nor in ships, because when the tide ebbed again the ships would be damaged in shoal water. Both circumstances, therefore, hindered the assault of the strongholds; and, whenever the natives were in fact overcome by huge siege-works—that is to say, when the sea had been set back by a massive mole built up level to the town-walls—and so began to despair of their fortunes, they would bring close in shore a large number of ships, of which they possessed an unlimited supply, and take off all their stuff and retire to the nearest strongholds, there to defend themselves again with the same advantages of position. They pursued these tactics for a great part of the summer the more easily because our own ships were detained by foul weather, and because the difficulty of navigation on a vast and open sea, with strong tides and few—nay, scarcely any—harbours, was extreme.

---

#### WORD TO REMEMBER

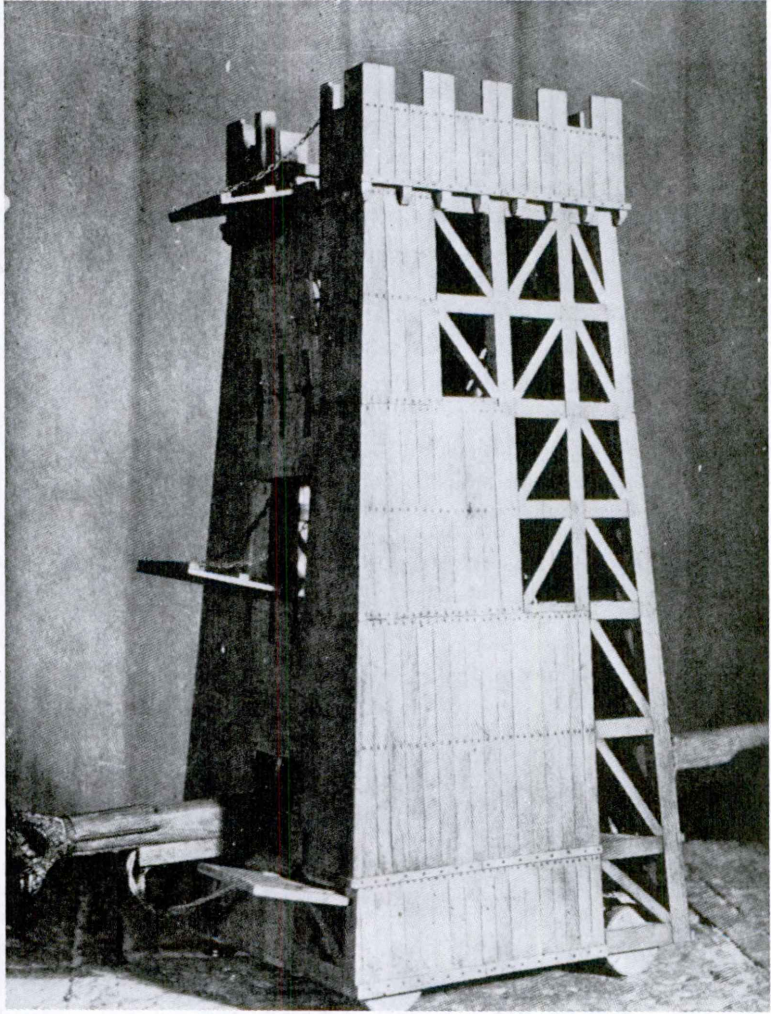
**Decimus (ī) Brūtus (ī)**, *Decimus Brutus* (brōō'tūs), one of Caesar's trusted lieutenants.

---

<sup>42</sup> Pictonēs, Pictonum, *the Pictones* (pīk'tō nēz).

<sup>43</sup> Santonī, Santonōrum, *the Santoni* (sān'tō nī).

<sup>44</sup> After the distribution of his forces Caesar had probably three legions and eight cohorts to carry on the sea and land campaign against the Veneti.



—*Courtesy Istituto Nazionale Luce*

#### A ROMAN SIEGE TOWER

Rolled up to the enemy's walls this siege tower provided a safe passage to the top of the battlements and at the same time effected a breach in the wall itself by means of the battering ram.

“Not so the ships of the Gauls, for they were built and equipped in the following fashion. Their keels were considerably more flat than those of our own ships, that they might more easily weather shoals and ebb-tide. Their prows were very lofty, and their sterns were similarly adapted to meet the force of waves and storms. The ships were made entirely of oak, to endure any violence and buffeting. The cross-pieces were beams a foot thick, fastened with iron nails as thick as a thumb. The anchors were attached by iron chains instead of cables. Skins and pieces of leather finely finished were used instead of sails, either because the natives had no supply of flax and no knowledge of its use, or, more probably, because they thought that the mighty ocean-storms and hurricanes could not be ridden out, nor the mighty burden of their ships conveniently controlled by means of sails.”<sup>45</sup>

70 Nostra classis ūnā celeritāte et pulsū<sup>46</sup> rēmōrum<sup>47</sup> classem Venetōrum superābat; illīs reliqua, prō lōcī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum, erant accommodātiōra.<sup>48</sup>

Neque enim eīs nostrae rōstrō<sup>49</sup> nocēre poterant (tanta in eīs erat firmitūdō<sup>50</sup>), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adjiciēbātur,

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**celeritās, celeritātis, speed, swiftness (cf. celeriter).**

**tempestās, tempestātis, storm, weather.**

**altitūdō, altitūdinis, height (cf. altus).**

**adjiciō, adjicere, adjēcī, adjectus, 3, tr., throw to, throw up, hurl (ad + jiciō).**

<sup>45</sup> Caesar, *The Gallic War*, translated by H. J. Edwards. Loeb Classical Library, Harvard University Press. pp. 153 and 155.

<sup>46</sup> **pulsus, ūs, stroke.**

<sup>47</sup> **rēmūs, ī, oar.**

<sup>48</sup> **accommodātus, a, um, adapted.**

<sup>49</sup> **rōstrum, ī, beak, prow (armored).**

<sup>50</sup> **firmitūdō, firmitūdinis, strength, solidity.**

et eādem dē causā minus commodē<sup>51</sup> cōpulīs<sup>52</sup> continēbantur. 75

Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et nāvēs sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōsisterent tūtius et, ab aestū<sup>53</sup> relictāe, nihil saxa<sup>54</sup> timērent.

Quārum rērum omnium cāsus<sup>55</sup> nostrīs nāvibus erat vehementer timendus.<sup>56</sup> 80

#### UNSUCCESSFUL SIEGE OPERATIONS

Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs, Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī neque hostium fugam, captīs oppidīs, reprīmī posse neque eīs nocērī posse,<sup>57</sup> exspectāre classem cōstituit.

#### THE FLEET ARRIVES

Quae ubi convēnit ac primum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter du- 85

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum, 3, intr., *come to, approach, is added* (cf. accession).

saeviō, 4, intr., *rage, am fierce.*

vadum, ī, *ford* (of a river), *shallow* (of the sea).

cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstitī, 3, intr., *take a position, halt, remain, form* (of soldiers), *ride at anchor* (of ships).

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, to no purpose.*

<sup>51</sup> *commodē*, adv., *readily, easily.*

<sup>52</sup> *cōpula*, ae, *grappling-hook.*

<sup>53</sup> *aestus*, ūs, *swelling, tide.*

<sup>54</sup> *saxum*, ī, *rock.*

<sup>55</sup> *cāsus*, ūs, *chance, misfortune, happening.*

<sup>56</sup> *timendus*, a, um; gerundive of *timeō*: *to be feared*; Gr. 878.

<sup>57</sup> Verbs that take a dative object must be used impersonally in the passive, retaining the dative object, Gr. 741. *eīs nocērī posse*: *that it was not possible to injure them* (lit., *that it was not possible to be injured to them*).

centae vīgintī<sup>58</sup> nāvēs eōrum, parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae, profectae ex portū, nostrīs adversae cōstitērunt.

Neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs militum  
90 centuriōnibusque quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae,<sup>59</sup> cōstābat quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae inīrent.

Rōstrō<sup>60</sup> enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant.

#### A ROMAN TRICK

“The deck-turrets were run up: but even then the Romans were overtopped by the lofty poops, and could not throw their javelins with effect. But the Roman engineers had prepared an ingenious contrivance. Two or more galleys rowed up close to one of the enemies' ships. Then, with sharp hooks fixed to the ends of long poles, the Romans caught hold of the halyards, and pulled them taut: the rowers plied their oars with might and main; and the sudden strain snapped the ropes. Down fell the yards: the troops clambered on to the helpless hulk.”<sup>61</sup>

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**genus, generis, n.,** *race, tribe, kind.*

**ōrnātus, a, um,** *equipped, fitted out.*

**adversus, a, um;** *w. dat., opposite, unfavorable, unsuccessful.*

**vel, conj.,** *or.*

**singulī, ae, a,** *one each.*

**cōnstat, cōnstāre, cōstitit, 1, intr.,** *it is agreed, it is certain, it is evident, it is known.*

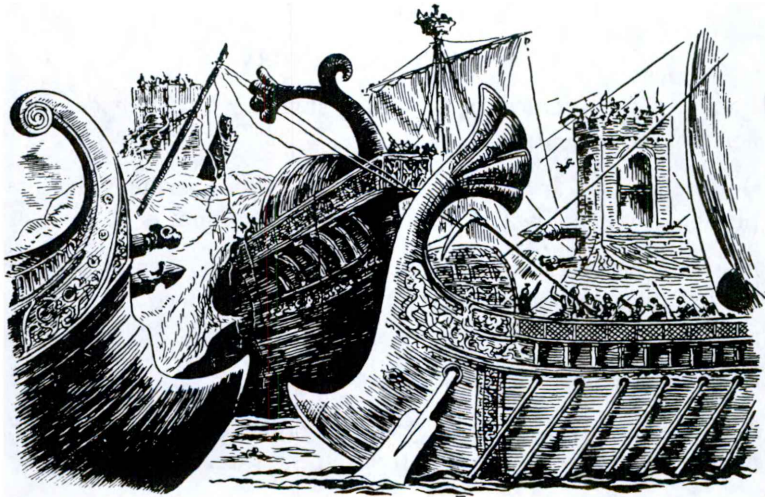
**pugna, ae,** *fight, battle.*

<sup>58</sup> *ducentī (ae, a) vīgintī, two hundred and twenty.*

<sup>59</sup> *attribuō, attribuere, attribui, attributus, 3, tr., assign.*

<sup>60</sup> *rōstrum, ī, beak, prow (armored).*

<sup>61</sup> T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, p. 66.



AN ANCIENT SEA FIGHT

Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī militēs facile superābant, atque eō magis quod<sup>62</sup> in cōspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur ut nūllum paulō fortius 9 factum latēre posset.

Omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus<sup>63</sup> in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**certāmen, certāminis, struggle, contest.**

**paulō; abl. of degree of difference, by a little, a little.**

**lateō, latēre, latuī, 2, intr., escape notice, lurk, am hidden.**

**unde, adv., whence, from where.**

**propinquus, a, um, near, neighboring.**

**mare, maris, sea; declined like neuter of gravis, grave.**

---

<sup>62</sup> quod, because; Gr. 572.

<sup>63</sup> dēspectus, ūs, a looking down, view.

## A COMPLETE VICTORY

Itaque, dējectis antennis,<sup>64</sup> militēs summā vī trāscendere<sup>65</sup> in  
100 hostium nāvēs contendēbant.

Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātis complūribus nāvibus, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt.

Ac jam conversis nāvibus in eam partem quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō tranquillitās<sup>66</sup> facta est ut sē ex locō movēre nōn  
105 possent.<sup>67</sup>

Quae rēs maximē fuit opportūna.

Nam singulās nāvēs nostrī expugnāvērunt ut paucae ex omni numerō noctis interventū<sup>68</sup> ad terram pervenīrent.

Ab hōrā ferē quārtā usque ad sōlis occāsūm pugnābātur.

## UNCONDITIONAL SURRENDER

110 Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtiusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est.

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

subitō, adv., *suddenly*.

opportūnus, a, um, *fit, opportune, favorable, advantageous*.

sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun*.

occāsus, ūs, *falling down, setting*; sōlis occāsus: *sunset*.

<sup>64</sup> *antenna, ae, sail yard*.

<sup>65</sup> *trāscendō, trāscendere, trāscendī, trāscēnsus, 3, tr., board, climb over*.

<sup>66</sup> *tranquillitās, tranquillitātis, calm*.

<sup>67</sup> The Veneti depended entirely on sails; they had no rowers.

<sup>68</sup> *interventus, ūs, coming on, aid*.

Omnis enim juventūs,<sup>69</sup> omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis,<sup>70</sup> eō convēnerant, et omnēs nāvēs in ūnum locum coēgerant.

Quibus āmissis, reliquī neque in alium locum sē recipere neque oppida dēfendere poterant.

115

Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt.

#### CAESAR'S RETALIATION

“They had made a very gallant fight for freedom; and Caesar respected a brave enemy: but he always took the straightest path to gain his end. He determined to teach the whole Gallic people, by a terrible lesson, that it was dangerous to rebel. As the Venetian senate were responsible for the act of violence which had led to the war, every man of them was put to death; and all the rest of the tribe, or all that could be caught, were sold into slavery.”<sup>71</sup>

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

aetās, aetātis, *age*.

āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissus, 3, tr., *lose*.

<sup>69</sup> *juventūs, juventūtis, f., the youth* (within the age group 17 to 45 years), a collective noun.

<sup>70</sup> *graviōris aetātis; descriptive genitive, Gr. 695.*

<sup>71</sup> T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, p. 91.

## 6. THE MASSACRE OF THE USIPETES

### INTRODUCTION

When Caesar challenged Ariovistus and drove him across the Rhine he gained two advantages.<sup>1</sup> The defeat of Ariovistus gave him the opportunity of posing as the defender of the Gauls against German invasion—a position which was of immense value to him in reconciling the Gallic tribes to his control. At the same time he drove from the territories of Gaul the one power that was strong enough to challenge Roman influence. However, his campaign against Ariovistus had committed him to continued vigilance along the eastern frontier—the Rhine.

Now once again, in 55 B. C., a German horde of some 400,000 persons appeared on the eastern bank of the Rhine. Two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, driven from their lands in central Germany by the pressure of the warlike Suebi, had come seeking land and food in Gaul. If these Germans were allowed to enter and remain, Caesar would once again find himself faced with a new and powerful rival in Gaul. Moreover, the disaffected among the Gauls might welcome the invaders as allies against the hated Roman legions. Hence only by vigorous and rapid action could Caesar protect Roman—and his own—interests.

### THE ARRIVAL OF THE GERMANS

Suēbōrum<sup>2</sup> gēns est longē maxima et fortissima Germānōrum omnium. Cum finitīmīs gentibus bellum saepe gerēbant. Suēbōrum<sup>2</sup> impetūs Usipetēs<sup>3</sup> et Tēncterī<sup>4</sup> diūtius sustinēre nōn po-

---

<sup>1</sup> See "The German Peril," pages 51-53.

<sup>2</sup> Suēbī, Suēbōrum, *the Suebi*, a powerful nation of central Germany including several tribes.

<sup>3</sup> Usipetēs, Usipetum, *the Usipetes* (ū sīp'ē tēz).

<sup>4</sup> Tēncterī, Tēncterōrum, *the Tencteri* (tēngk'tē rī).

terant. Itaque hī ex fīnibus suīs exiērunt et tandem ad Rhēnum pervēnerunt et id flūmen, nōn longē ā mari<sup>5</sup> quō Rhēnus influit,<sup>6</sup> s trānsire cōstituērunt. Menapii<sup>7</sup> hās regiōnēs incolēbant.

## THE MENAPII PREVENT A CROSSING

Hī ad<sup>8</sup> utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs et aedificia<sup>9</sup> habēbant sed, Germānōrum<sup>10</sup> adventū perterriti, ex eīs agrīs quōs trāns flūmen habuerant in Galliam fūgērunt et, collocātis in rīpā praesidiīs, Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant. 10

## THE GERMAN STRATAGEM

Illī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium<sup>11</sup> neque clam<sup>12</sup> trānsire propter praesidia Menapiōrum<sup>7</sup> possent, reverti sē in suās regiōnēs simulāvērunt<sup>13</sup> et trīdūi viam<sup>14</sup> prōgressī rūsus<sup>15</sup> revertērunt.<sup>16</sup> Eōrum equitātus, hōc itinere ūnā nocte<sup>17</sup> cōfectō, inopināntēs<sup>18</sup> Menapiōs<sup>7</sup> subitō oppressit<sup>19</sup> quī, dē 15 Germānōrum profectiōne per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs facti, sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs agrōs reverterant. His interfectis nāvibusque eōrum captis, Germānī flūmen celeriter trānsiērunt atque reliquam partem Menapiōrum<sup>13</sup> subitō oppressērunt.<sup>19</sup>

<sup>5</sup> See map, page 100.

<sup>6</sup> *influō, influere, inflixi*, 3, intr., *flow into, empty into*.

<sup>7</sup> *Menapii, Menapiōrum, the Menapii* (mé nā'pī ī), a Gallic tribe.

<sup>8</sup> *ad*; we would say *on*.

<sup>9</sup> *aedificium, ī, building*.

<sup>10</sup> The Usipetes and the Tencteri numbered about 430,000 persons.

<sup>11</sup> The Menapii had, of course, taken all the boats to the western bank.

<sup>12</sup> *clam, adv., secretly*.

<sup>13</sup> *simulō, 1, tr.*; acc. w. infin., *pretend*.

<sup>14</sup> *trīdūi viam: a three days' journey*.

<sup>15</sup> *rūsus, adv., again*.

<sup>16</sup> *Revertor* in the perfect has two forms, *reversus sum* or *reverti*.

<sup>17</sup> *ūnā nocte*; time within which, Gr. 922.

<sup>18</sup> *inopināns (gen. inopinantis), unawares, not expecting, off-guard*.

<sup>19</sup> *opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressus, 3, tr., overwhelm, surprise*.

20 Omnibus eōrum aedificiis<sup>20</sup> occupātis, reliquam partem hiemis  
sē eōrum cōpiis<sup>21</sup> aluērunt.<sup>22</sup>

His dē rēbus Caesar, quī in Galliā Citeriōre erat, certior factus  
est.

#### CAESAR RETURNS TO GAUL

When Caesar learned of the invasion he realized that he faced the danger of a serious general revolt, for the excitable Gauls might at once ally themselves with the newcomers. He therefore set out for the army earlier than usual. When he arrived in Gaul he learned that his suspicion had been well grounded, for some of the tribes were already secretly negotiating with the Germans. The latter, encouraged by the attitude of the Gauls, had begun to move deeper into Gaul. Caesar then determined to hold a council of chiefs, but to conceal his knowledge of their dealings with the Germans.

Prīncipibus Galliae undique ad sē vocātis, Caesar, animīs<sup>23</sup>  
25 eōrum cōfirmātis equitātūque imperātō, bellum cum Germānis  
gerere cōstituit. Rē frūmentāriā<sup>24</sup> comparātā equitibusque dē-  
lēctis,<sup>25</sup> iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locis esse Germānōs  
audiēbat.

30 Ā quibus cum nōn longē abesset, lēgātī ab eis vērunt quōrum  
haec fuit ōrātiō:

#### THE PLEA OF THE ENVOYS—CAESAR'S ANSWER

“We have not sought war with the Roman people,” they said in effect, “nor will we refuse battle if attacked. We have come to

<sup>20</sup> aedificium, ī, *building*.

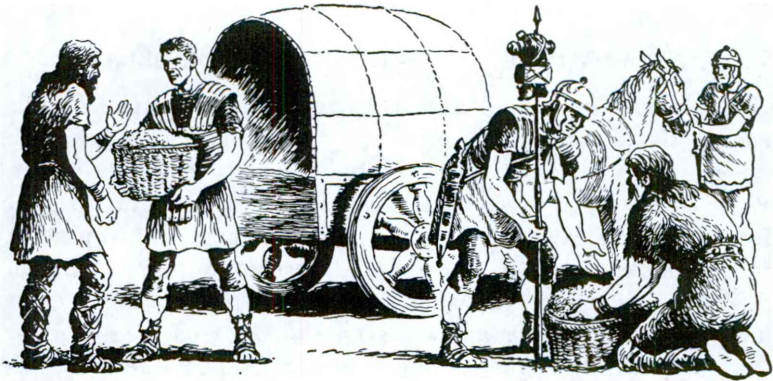
<sup>21</sup> cōpiis; *i. e.*, on the supplies stored up by the Menapii.

<sup>22</sup> alō, alere, alui, 3, tr., *feed, support*.

<sup>23</sup> animus, ī, *mind, spirit*.

<sup>24</sup> rēs (reī) frūmentāria (ae), *grain supply*.

<sup>25</sup> dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus, 3, tr., *select*. Caesar picked out the most trustworthy contingents from the cavalry he had levied on the Gauls.



THE ROMANS GET GRAIN FROM THE GAULS

Gaul unwillingly, driven from our own homes. Either grant us lands in Gaul or allow us to hold the ones we have acquired by conquest.”

Caesar answered that he could make no peace with them as long as they remained in Gaul. It was not just, he said, that men unable to defend their own territories should seize those of others. Besides, there were no unoccupied lands in Gaul for so large a host.

“The envoys said that they would report this to their people and, after deliberation upon the matter, return to Caesar in three days: they asked him not to move his camp nearer in the meanwhile. Caesar replied that he could not even grant that request. He knew, in fact, that they had sent a large detachment of cavalry some days before to the country of the Ambivariti across the Meuse, to get booty and corn: he supposed that they were waiting for this cavalry, and for that reason sought to interpose delay.”<sup>26</sup>

---

<sup>26</sup> *The Gallic War*, tr. by H. J. Edwards, p. 191.

### THE ENVOYS RETURN—THEIR PLEA FOR DELAY

“When Caesar was no more than twelve miles away from the enemy, the deputies returned to him as agreed: they met him on the march, and besought him earnestly not to advance further. When their request was not granted, they asked him to send forward to the cavalry in advance of his column and to prevent them from engaging, and to grant themselves an opportunity of sending deputies into the land of the Ubii. They put forward the hope that if the chiefs and the senate of the Ubii pledged their faith on oath, they (the Germans) would accept the terms which Caesar offered; and they asked him to give them an interval of three days to settle these affairs. Caesar supposed that all these pleas had the same object as before, to secure by a three days’ interval the return of their absent cavalry; however, he said that on that day he would advance no further than four miles, in order to get water. He instructed them to meet him there next day with as large a number as they could, in order that he might take cognisance of their demands.

### CAESAR’S INSTRUCTION TO THE CAVALRY

“Meanwhile he sent instructions to the commanders who had gone forward with all the cavalry not to provoke the enemy to an engagement, and, if provoked themselves, to hold their ground until he himself with the army had come up nearer.

### TREACHERY

“The enemy had no more than eight hundred cavalry, for the party which had gone across the Meuse to get corn was not yet returned. Our own men, five thousand strong, had nothing to fear, for the deputies of the Germans had left Caesar but a short while before, having asked for a truce that day.”<sup>27</sup>

Hostēs autem, ut primum nostrōs equitēs cōspexērunt, impetū subitō factō nostrōs celeriter perturbāvērunt. Complūribus

---

<sup>27</sup> *The Gallic War*, tr. by H. J. Edwards, pp. 191 and 193.

nostris dējectis, reliquōs in fugam conjēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt ut usque in cōspectum agminis nostrī fūgerint.<sup>28</sup>

#### CAESAR'S PLAN

"After this engagement was over, Caesar felt that he ought no longer to receive deputies nor to accept conditions from tribes which had sought for peace by guile and treachery, and then had actually begun war. Further, he judged it the height of madness to wait till the enemy's forces should be increased and their cavalry returned. Knowing as he did the fickleness of the Gauls, he apprehended how much influence the enemy had already acquired over them by a single engagement; and he considered that no time to form plans should be given them. Thus determined, he communicated to the lieutenant-generals and the quartermaster-general his purpose not to lose a day in giving battle.

#### CAESAR SEIZES AN OPPORTUNITY

"Then, most fortunately, a certain thing occurred. The next morning, as treacherous and as hypocritical as ever,<sup>29</sup> a large company of Germans, which included all the principal and senior men, came to his quarters, with a double object—to clear them selves (so they alleged) for engaging in a battle the day before contrary to the agreement and to their own request therein, and also by deceit to get what they could in respect of the truce."<sup>30</sup>

<sup>28</sup> The cavalry, of course, was composed of Gallic levies. They had a deep-seated fear of the Germans and it is not surprising that they easily became alarmed.

<sup>29</sup> Is this the remark of a *propagandist*? Is it justified? (See the discussion, pages 96-98.) Bennett comments: "The circumstances indicate that this charge of treachery is not justified. Caesar is apparently endeavoring to offer an excuse for his own attack upon the Usipetes and Tencteri. The attack of the previous day upon the Roman cavalry could hardly have been deliberately planned; it was rather the sudden act of a few impetuous Germans; otherwise ambassadors would scarcely have ventured to come at all." Charles E. Bennett, *Caesar's Gallic War* (Books I-IV). Allyn and Bacon, 1903, p. 226.

<sup>30</sup> *The Gallic War*, tr. by H. J. Edwards, p. 195.

- 35 Caesar illōs retinērī jussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās ē castrīs dūxit equitātumque agmen sequī jussit.

#### CAESAR MOVES AGAINST THE ENEMY

Acīē triplicī instrūctā et celeriter itinere cōfectō, ad hostium castra subitō pervēnit. Germānī, celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū<sup>31</sup> suōrum perterritī, vehementer perturbābantur. Militēs  
 40 vērō nostrī, Germānōrum perfidiā<sup>32</sup> incitātī, in castra inrūpērunt.<sup>33</sup> Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt paulisper<sup>34</sup> nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs<sup>35</sup> impedimentaue proelium com-  
 mīsērunt; sed reliqua multitudō<sup>36</sup> puerōrum mulierumque<sup>37</sup>—nam cum omnibus suis domō exierant Rhēnumque trānsierant—fugere  
 45 coepit. Quōs ut insequerētur atque interficeret, Caesar equitātum mīsīt. Germānī, clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abjectīs<sup>38</sup> signisque relictīs, sē ex castrīs ējēcērunt,<sup>39</sup> et cum ad cōnfluentem<sup>40</sup> Mosae<sup>41</sup> et Rhēnī pervēnissent, magnō numerō  
 50 flūminis periērunt.<sup>42</sup> Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs<sup>43</sup> sē in castra recēpērunt.

#### DISCUSSION

You have now read most of Caesar's own account of the mas-

<sup>31</sup> *discessus, ūs, departure.* By seizing those who had come to his camp, Caesar had deprived the Germans of all leadership.

<sup>32</sup> *perfidia, ae, treachery.*

<sup>33</sup> *inrumpō, inrumpere, inrūpī, inruptus, 3, tr., break in, force a way in.*

<sup>34</sup> *paulisper, adv., a little while.*

<sup>35</sup> *carrus, ī, wagon, cart.*

<sup>36</sup> *multitudō, multitudinis, multitude, throng.*

<sup>37</sup> *mulier, mulieris, f., woman.*

<sup>38</sup> *abjiciō, abjicere, abjēcī, abjectus, 3, tr., throw away, throw down.*

<sup>39</sup> *ējiciō, ējicere, ējēcī, ējectus, 3, tr., throw out, hurl out.*

<sup>40</sup> *cōnfluēns, cōnfluentis, f., confluence.*

<sup>41</sup> *Mosa, ae, the Mosa (a river), now called the Meuse.*

<sup>42</sup> *pereō, perīre, perīi, peritum, irreg., intr., perish, die (compound of per and eō).*

<sup>43</sup> *incolumis, e, safe.*



THE MASSACRE OF THE GERMANS

sacre. He has been careful to give the reasons on which he based his action, for he well knew that political enemies might find here an opportunity to attack him and his policy. But he calmly sets down the facts—his deliberate retention of the German leaders, his determined attack on the camp, the indiscriminate massacre of men, women, and children. Was he justified from a military and diplomatic standpoint? Was he justified from a moral standpoint?

Referring to such incidents as this in the Gallic War, Suetonius, a Roman historian writing over a century and a half later (about A. D. 120), says:

“After that he [Caesar] did not let slip any pretext for war, however unjust and dangerous it might be, picking quarrels as well with allied, as with hostile and barbarous nations; so that once the senate decreed that a commission be sent to inquire into the conditions of the Gallic provinces, and some even recommended that Caesar be handed over to the enemy. But as his enterprises prospered, thanksgivings were appointed in his honour oftener and for longer periods than for anyone before his time.”<sup>44</sup>

---

<sup>44</sup> *Suetonius*, translated by J. C. Rolfe. Loeb Classical Library, Harvard University Press. Vol. I, p. 33.

T. Rice Holmes, a distinguished modern scholar, also comments on this incident :

“The conduct of Caesar was fiercely condemned by Cato and others in the Roman Senate. The refusal to listen to the explanation of the German chiefs; their detention, contrary, as it appeared, to the law of nations; and then the virtual extermination of an entire people,—these things perhaps shocked sensitive consciences, and certainly gave a handle to political opponents. Cato actually proposed that the perfidious Governor should be given up to the Germans. Caesar pursued his course unmoved. The sacrifice of life was appalling: but it was made once for all. Thoroughly cowed, the Germans thenceforward ceased to disturb the tranquillity of Gaul.”<sup>45</sup>

---

<sup>45</sup> T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. London, Oxford University Press, 1931. p. 74.

## 7. THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

### CAESAR CROSSES THE RHINE

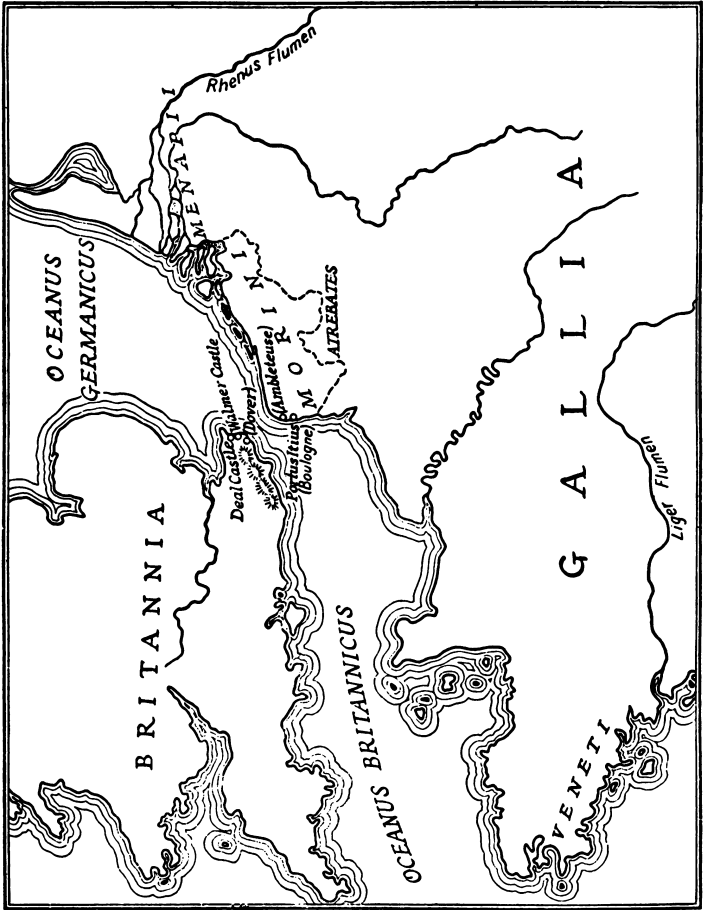
After the slaughter of the German invaders, Caesar decided to make a 'punitive expedition' across the Rhine to teach the Germans respect for the decrees of the *Senātus Populusque Rōmānus*. Within ten days his engineers had constructed a bridge about eight miles north of Coblenz.<sup>1</sup> He devastated the fields of the Sugambri who had retreated into the forest. In a gesture of power he released the Ubii from their overlords, the Suebi, and thereby gained their friendship. He then returned to Gaul and destroyed the bridge. Now more clearly than ever, the Rhine was marked out as the eastern boundary of the imperial province of Gaul. For five centuries the Romans would hold the barbarian advance at the Rhine.

### HE MARCHES TO THE NORTHERN COAST OF GAUL

Caesar marched westward into the land of the Morini to complete preparations for the invasion of Britain. The Britons had aided the Veneti in the previous year and were in complete sympathy with anti-Roman feeling in Gaul. Either by conquest or repression, Caesar would secure the northern frontier of Gaul, the channel coast.

---

<sup>1</sup> In World War II engineers of the United States Army built sixty-two bridges across the Rhine to support the American drive into Germany. Of these, five were railroad bridges, forty-six pontoon bridges, and eleven were semi-permanent highway bridges. The average construction time for the railroad bridges was nine days and one hour; for the highway bridges, fourteen days.



## CAESAR'S REASONS FOR INVADING BRITAIN

Exiguā<sup>2</sup> parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs mātūrae<sup>3</sup> sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficiscī contendit.<sup>4</sup> Nam omnibus ferē Gallicīs<sup>5</sup> bellis hostibus nostrīs inde missa esse auxilia intellegēbat. Īnsulam adire volēbat, genus hominum perspicere, loca, portūs, aditūs<sup>6</sup> cognōscere,<sup>7</sup> quae omnia ferē Gallīs s erant incognita.

Neque enim temere<sup>8</sup> praeter mercātōrēs Britanniam adit quisquam,<sup>9</sup> neque hīs ipsis nōtum est quidquam<sup>9</sup> praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliam.

## HIS PREPARATIONS

Itaque, vocātis ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset 10

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

aestās, aestātis, *summer*.

etsī, conj., *although*.

īnsula, ae, *island*.

perspicō, perspicere, perspexī, perspectus, 3, tr., *inspect, perceive, learn*.

incognitus, a, um; w. dat., *unknown* (in + cognōscō).

nōtus, a, um; w. dat., *known*.

<sup>2</sup> exiguus, a, um, *small*.

<sup>3</sup> mātūrus, a, um, *early*.

<sup>4</sup> There have since been many invasions and attempted invasions of England. Angles, Saxons, and Danes landed on its coast. In 1588 the Spanish Armada approached England; in 1805 Napoleon was planning to cross the channel; in 1942 Hitler's *Blitz* reached the channel and poised there threateningly.

<sup>5</sup> Gallicus, a, um, *Gallic*.

<sup>6</sup> aditus, ūs, *approach*.

<sup>7</sup> Britain at this time was an unknown land to the Romans. Tin was mined there and imported by the Romans, but beyond that they knew very little of the island itself. Caesar's purpose in this first visit was rather to obtain information than to make a permanent occupation, for not enough of the summer remained to conduct a full-scale campaign.

<sup>8</sup> temere, adv., *without good reason*.

<sup>9</sup> quisquam, quidquam, *anyone, anything*.

insulae magnitudō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent, neque quī essent ad mājōrem nāvium multitudinem idōneī portūs, reperire poterat.<sup>10</sup> Itaque Gājum Volusēnum<sup>11</sup> quī haec cognōsceret cum nāvī longā praer-  
15 mīsīt. Huic mandāvit ut, explōrātīs omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam primum<sup>12</sup> reverterētur.

Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs<sup>13</sup> profectus est; inde enim erat brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus.<sup>14</sup> Hūc<sup>15</sup> nāvēs undique ex finitimīs regiōnibus et classem quam superiōre aestāte fēcerat<sup>16</sup>  
20 jubet convenīre.

### AN EXCHANGE OF ENVOYS

Interim cōsiliō ējus cognitō et per mercātōrēs Britannīs nunti-  
ātō, ā complūribus insulae cīvitatibus ad eum lēgātī vērunt,

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

magnitudō, magnitudinis, *size, extent* (cf. *magnus*).

multitudō, multitudinis, *great number, multitude, common people* (cf. *multus*).

praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissus, 3, tr., *send ahead, send in advance*.

---

<sup>10</sup> World War II saw the most elaborate development of landing operations. In principle the preparations required remain the same—men and supplies, means of transportation, knowledge of weather and terrain. In 1944, 125,000,000 detail maps of France were printed for the Allied invasion. For months before D Day experts studied every available map, photograph, and description of the French coast. Caesar had far fewer sources of information, but he had the same needs and objectives.

<sup>11</sup> Gājus (i) Volusēnus (i), *Gaius Volusenus*, a tribune, highly regarded by Caesar for his courage and his intelligence. (Hereafter proper names will not be repeated in the footnotes within a section.)

<sup>12</sup> *quam primum*: *as soon as possible*.

<sup>13</sup> Morinī, Morinōrum, *the Morini* (mōr'in ī).

<sup>14</sup> trājectus, ūs, *crossing, passage*.

<sup>15</sup> hūc, adv., *hither, to this place*. This was a harbor among the Morini, probably Wissant, which was used during the Middle Ages but is now filled with sand.

<sup>16</sup> *quam . . . fēcerat*; i. e., for the war with the Veneti.

quī pollicērentur sē obsidēs datūrōs atque imperāta populī Rōmānī factūrōs esse. Quibus audītīs, liberāliter<sup>17</sup> pollicitus hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remisit, et <sup>25</sup> ūnā cum eīs misit Commium,<sup>18</sup> cūjus et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat,<sup>19</sup> et quem sibi fidēlem<sup>20</sup> esse arbitrābātur, cūjusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus amplissima erat. Huic imperāvit ut adīret quās posset cīvitātēs et hortārētur ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequerentur, sēque<sup>21</sup> celeriter eō ventūrum nuntiāret. <sup>30</sup>

### FINAL PREPARATIONS

Volusēnus, perspectīs<sup>22</sup> regiōnibus omnibus, quīntō<sup>23</sup> diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset refert.

“While Caesar was waiting in these parts to get his ships ready for sea, envoys came from a large section of the Morini to apologize for their recent conduct in attacking the Roman People and promise obedience to his commands, pleading that they were uncivilized and knew nothing of our ways. Caesar regarded this as most opportune, for he had no wish to leave an enemy in his rear; owing to the time of year, he had no means of undertaking a campaign; and he did not think it wise to postpone his expedi-

---

### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**imperātum, ī,** *order, command.*

**domum:** (*to*) *home* (acc. of *domus*; Gr. 917).

**ūnā,** *adv., along with, together.*

---

<sup>17</sup> **liberāliter,** *adv., generously, freely.*

<sup>18</sup> **Commius, ī,** *Commius,* a chief of the Atrebates. Caesar had made him king of the Atrebates after the subjugation of that tribe.

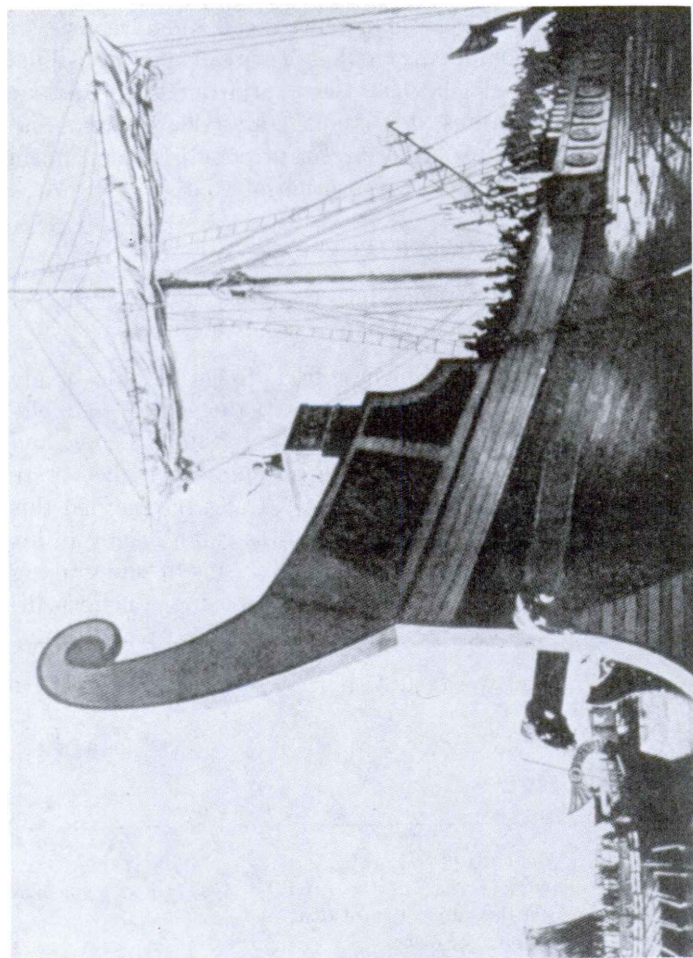
<sup>19</sup> **probō,** 1, tr., *consider good, approve.*

<sup>20</sup> **fidēlis,** e; w. dat., *faithful.*

<sup>21</sup> **sē;** refers back to the subject of *imperāvit.*

<sup>22</sup> Volusenus, of course, did not land but observed what he could while skirting the shore.

<sup>23</sup> **quīntus,** a, um, *fifth.*



—Pictures, Inc.

A ROMAN WAR FLEET READY TO SAIL

tion to Britain for trivialities. Accordingly he ordered the envoys to furnish a large number of hostages, and on their arrival admitted the Morini to terms.

“About eighty transports, which he considered sufficient to convey two legions, were collected and assembled;<sup>24</sup> the galleys which he had besides he assigned to the quaestor, the generals, and the auxiliary officers. Besides these there were eighteen transports, eight miles off, which were prevented from making the same harbour by contrary winds: these he assigned to the cavalry.”<sup>25</sup>

Reliquum exercitum Quīntō Titūrīō Sabīnō<sup>26</sup> et Lūciō Aurunculējō Cottae,<sup>27</sup> lēgātīs, in Menapiōs<sup>28</sup> atque in eōs pāgōs<sup>29</sup> Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum<sup>30</sup> 35 dedit. Pūblium Sulpicium Rūfum,<sup>31</sup> lēgātum, cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre jussit.

#### THE TASK FORCE SAILS

His cōstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvīgandum tem-

#### WORD TO REMEMBER

**nactus, a, um** (perfect participle of *nancīscor*), *having obtained possession of, having met with, having found.*

<sup>24</sup> Napoleon had collected 2,432 vessels for his proposed attack on England. In the American sector of the Normandy invasion in World War II, 2,451 vessels were employed.

<sup>25</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, translated by T. Rice Holmes. London, Macmillan, 1908. pp. 113-114.

<sup>26</sup> Quīntus (ī) Titūrīus (ī) Sabīnus (ī), *Quintus Titurius Sabinus.*

<sup>27</sup> Lūcius (ī) Aurunculējus (ī) Cotta (ae), *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta.*

<sup>28</sup> Menapii, Menapiōrum, *the Menapii* (mé nā'pī ī).

<sup>29</sup> pāgus, ī, *village, district.*

<sup>30</sup> dūcendum; agrees with *exercitum* (lit.: *to be led*). In English we usually say *to lead*. See Gr. 883.

<sup>31</sup> Pūblius (ī) Sulpicius (ī) Rūfus (ī), *Publius Sulpicius Rufus.*

pestātem, tertiā ferē vigiliā nāvēs solvit,<sup>32</sup> equitēsque in ulteri-  
 40 ōrem portum prōgredi et nāvēs cōscendere<sup>33</sup> et sē sequī jussit.  
 Ā quibus cum paulō tardius<sup>34</sup> esset administrātum, ipse, hōrā diēi  
 circiter quārtā,<sup>35</sup> cum primīs nāvibus ad Britanniam pervēnit  
 atque ibi in omnibus collibus<sup>36</sup> instrūctās hostium cōpiās armātās<sup>37</sup>  
 cōspexit. Cūjus locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus an-  
 45 gustē<sup>38</sup> mare continēbātur ut ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēla  
 conjici possent. Hunc ad ēgrediendum minimē idōneum locum  
 arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenirent,<sup>39</sup> ad hōram  
 nōnam<sup>40</sup> in ancorīs exspectāvit.

Interim, lēgātīs tribunisque militum convocātīs, et quae ex  
 50 Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque ut  
 ad nūtum<sup>41</sup> et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**lītus, litoris, n., seashore, shore, beach.**

**minimē, adv., very little, by no means, not at all (cf. minimus).**

**ancora, ae, anchor; in ancorīs: at anchor.**

<sup>32</sup> solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, 3, tr., *loosen, untie*; w. nāvēs, *set sail, put to sea.*

<sup>33</sup> cōscendō, cōscendere, cōscendī, cōscēnsus, 3, tr., *climb, board, go on board.*

<sup>34</sup> tardius, comp. adv., *slower, too slow, rather slow.* They were too slow to take advantage of the favorable wind and were delayed three days.

<sup>35</sup> hōrā quārtā; ablative of time when, Gr. 920. At this season the fourth hour of the day began about 8:30 A. M. and ended after 9:30 A. M.

<sup>36</sup> The famous chalk cliffs of Dover.

<sup>37</sup> armō, 1, tr., *arm, equip.*

<sup>38</sup> angustē, adv., *narrowly.*

<sup>39</sup> dum . . . convenirent: *until . . . should come together.*

<sup>40</sup> nōnus, a, um, *ninth.* Hōrā diēi nōna was about 3:00 P. M.

<sup>41</sup> nūtus, ūs, *nod* (of command); ad nūtum et ad tempus: *smartly and at the right time* (T. Rice Holmes). The development of a landing operation was so uncertain that preliminary orders could not be given to cover details. Commands would have to be adapted to each emergency, and it was imperative that they be carried out precisely.

dīmissis, et ventum et aestum<sup>42</sup> ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātis ancoris, circiter milia passuum septem<sup>43</sup> ab eō locō prōgressus,<sup>44</sup> apertō ac plānō<sup>45</sup> litore nāvēs constituit.<sup>46</sup> At barbari, cōsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equi- 55 tātū et essedāriis,<sup>47</sup> quō genere<sup>48</sup> in proeliis ūtī cōsuērunt,<sup>49</sup> reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī, nostrōs nāvibus ēgredi prohibēbant.

### DIFFICULTIES OF THE LANDING

Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitudinem nisi<sup>50</sup> in altō<sup>51</sup> cōstituī nōn poterant, militibus autem ignōtis<sup>52</sup> locis, impedītis manibus, magnō et gravī onere<sup>53</sup> armō- 60 um oppressis,<sup>54</sup> simul<sup>55</sup> et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūcti-

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

at, conj., *but*.

subsequor, subseqūi, subsecūtus sum, 3, tr., *follow closely, follow up, follow on*.

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of, for*.

dēsiliō, dēsilire, dēsilui, dēsultum, 4, intr., *leap down*.

<sup>42</sup> *aestus, ūs, tide.*

<sup>43</sup> *septem, seven.*

<sup>44</sup> Caesar sailed northeast and landed between Walmer Castle and Deal Castle.

<sup>45</sup> *plānus, a, um, level, "even-shelving."*

<sup>46</sup> Probably about 5:00 P. M.

<sup>47</sup> *essedārius, ī, soldier fighting from a chariot, a charioteer.*

<sup>48</sup> *quō genere: a kind of troops which; a kind of warriors whom* (T. Rice Holmes).

<sup>49</sup> *cōsuērunt; shortened form for cōsuēvērunt, Gr. 1023.*

<sup>50</sup> *nisi, adv., except.*

<sup>51</sup> *altum, ī, the deep (i. e., water).*

<sup>52</sup> *ignōtus, a, um; w. dat., unknown.*

<sup>53</sup> *onus, oneris, n., burden.*

<sup>54</sup> *opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressus, 3, tr., weigh with, weigh down.*

<sup>55</sup> *simul, adv., at the same time.*



—Historical Pictures Service

CAESAR INVADING BRITAIN

bus<sup>56</sup> consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum<sup>57</sup> illi aut ex āridō<sup>58</sup> aut paulum<sup>59</sup> in aquam<sup>60</sup> prōgressī, omnibus membrīs<sup>61</sup> expeditīs,<sup>62</sup> nōtissimīs locīs, audācter<sup>63</sup> tēla conjicerent et equōs<sup>64</sup> insuēfactōs<sup>65</sup> incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī,<sup>65</sup> atque hūjus omnīnō generis pugnae imperitī,<sup>66</sup> nōn eādē alacritāte<sup>67</sup> ac studiō quō in pedestribus<sup>68</sup> ūtī proeliīs cōsuērant<sup>69</sup> ūtēbantur.

“Caesar, noticing this, ordered the galleys, with the look of which the natives were not familiar, and which were easier to handle, to sheer off a little from the transports, row hard and range alongside of the enemy’s flank, and slingers, archers, and artillery to shoot from their decks and drive the enemy out of the way. This manoeuvre was of great service to our men; for the natives, alarmed by the build of the ships, the motion of the

---

WORD TO REMEMBER

**studium, ī, zeal, eagerness, desire, devotion, occupation (cf. studeō).**

---

<sup>56</sup> flūctus, ūs, *wave, surf.*

<sup>57</sup> cum, *while.* There is an idea of *although* and of circumstance; hence the subjunctive, Gr. 596.

<sup>58</sup> āridum, ī, *dry (land).*

<sup>59</sup> paulum, adv., *a little way.*

<sup>60</sup> aqua, ae, *water.*

<sup>61</sup> membrum, ī, *member (of the body).*

<sup>62</sup> expeditus, a, um, *unimpeded.*

<sup>63</sup> audācter, adv., *boldly.*

<sup>64</sup> equus, ī, *horse.*

<sup>65</sup> insuēfactus, a, um, *trained.* The horses of the Britons were trained to enter the surf.

<sup>66</sup> imperitus, a, um; w. gen., *unskilled in.*

<sup>67</sup> alacritās, alacritātis, *eagerness, ardor.*

<sup>68</sup> pedester, pedestris, pedestre, *on foot, infantry.*

<sup>69</sup> cōsuērant; shortened form for cōsuēverant.

oars, and the strangeness of the artillery, stood still, and then drew back a little."<sup>70</sup>

### A HERO LEADS THE WAY

Atque, nostrīs militibus cūctantibus,<sup>71</sup> maximē propter alti-  
 70 tūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus<sup>72</sup>  
 deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter<sup>73</sup> ēveniret,<sup>74</sup> "Dēsilīte," inquit,  
 "militēs, nisi<sup>75</sup> vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere;<sup>76</sup> ego certē<sup>77</sup>  
 meum reī pūblicaē atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō."<sup>78</sup> Cum  
 hoc vōce magnā dixisset, sē ex nāvī prōjēcit atque in hostēs  
 75 aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē nē tantum  
 fieret dēdecus,<sup>79</sup> ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs aliī, cum ex  
 proximīs nāvibus cōspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropin-  
 quāvērunt.

### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**decimus, a, um, tenth.**

**aquila, ae, eagle, standard** (since the chief standard of a legion was the image of an eagle).

**ūniversī, ae, a, all together, all.**

<sup>70</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes, p. 116.

<sup>71</sup> *cūctor*, 1, intr., *hesitate*.

<sup>72</sup> *obtestor*, 1, tr., *call upon*.

<sup>73</sup> *fēliciter*, adv., *successfully*.

<sup>74</sup> *ēveniō*, *ēvenīre*, *ēvēnī*, *ēventum*, 4, intr., *come out, turn out*.

<sup>75</sup> *nisi*, conj., *unless*.

<sup>76</sup> *prōdō*, *prōdere*, *prōdidī*, *prōditus*, 3, tr., *betray, give up*.

<sup>77</sup> *certē*, adv., *certainly*.

<sup>78</sup> *praestō*, *praestāre*, *praestitī*, *praestātus*, 1, tr., *display, perform, discharge*; *praestiterō* (future perfect): *I shall have discharged*.

<sup>79</sup> *dēdecus*, *dēdecoris*, n., *disgrace*.

## A DESPERATE STRUGGLE IN THE SURF

Pugnātum est ab utrīsq̄ue ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque firmiter<sup>80</sup> īnsistere<sup>81</sup> neque signa subsequī<sup>80</sup> poterant, vehementer perturbābantur. Hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi<sup>82</sup> ex litore aliquōs<sup>83</sup> singulārēs<sup>84</sup> ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōspexerant, incitātīs equīs,<sup>85</sup> impeditōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant,<sup>86</sup> alii ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla conjiciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās<sup>87</sup> lon-<sup>85</sup> gārū nāvium et speculātōria nāvigia<sup>88</sup> militibus complērī jussit, et quōs labōrāntēs<sup>89</sup> cōspexerat hīs subsidia mittēbat.

## A LANDING IS EFFECTED

Nostrī, simul atque in āridō<sup>90</sup> constitērunt, in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt, neque longius sequī

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**adorior, adoriri, adortus sum, 4, tr., rise against, assail, attack.**  
**subsidium, ī, reserves, help, aid.**  
**simul atque, conj., as soon as.**

<sup>80</sup> *firmiter, adv., firmly.*

<sup>81</sup> *īnsistō, īnsistere, īnstiti, 3, intr., take a stand, maintain a footing. It was difficult to get a firm footing in the surf.*

<sup>82</sup> *ubi, conj., whenever. (The tenses—imperfect in the main clause, circumsistēbant and conjiciēbant, and pluperfect in the subordinate clause, cōspexerant—show that ubi is used here of repeated action, Gr. 542, 544.)*

<sup>83</sup> *aliquis, aliquid, anyone, anything.*

<sup>84</sup> *singulāris, e, alone, one by one.*

<sup>85</sup> *equus, ī, horse.*

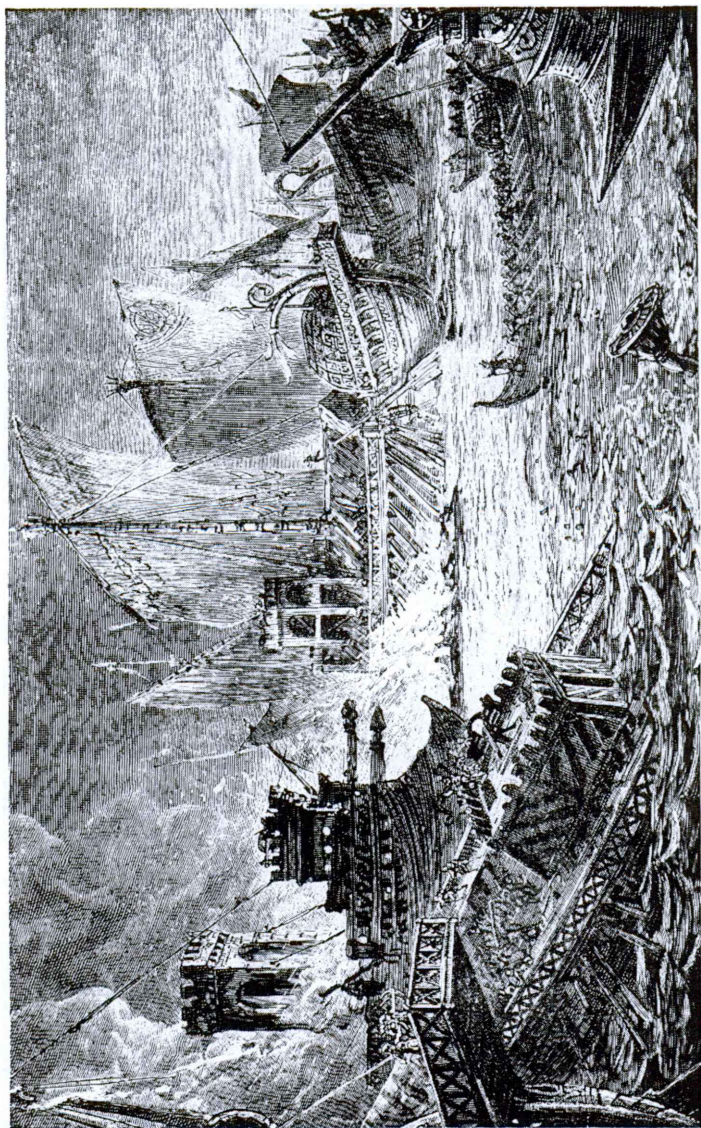
<sup>86</sup> *circumsistō, circumsistere, circumstiti, 3, tr., surround, hem in.*

<sup>87</sup> *scapha, ae, skiff.*

<sup>88</sup> *nāvigium (ī) speculātōrium (ī), scouting boats.*

<sup>89</sup> *labōrō, 1, intr., toil, am troubled, am hard pressed.*

<sup>90</sup> *āridum, ī, dry (land).*



—Culver Service

A ROMAN NAVAL BATTLE

potuērunt quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn 90  
potuerant.<sup>91</sup> Hoc ūnum ad prīstinam<sup>92</sup> fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

## PEACE

Hostēs, proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt,  
statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; sē obsidēs datūrōs  
quaeque imperāvisset<sup>93</sup> factūrōs esse pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs  
lēgātīs Commius vēnit, quem suprā dēmōstrāveram ā Caesare 95  
in Britanniam praemissum esse. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum  
ad eōs Caesaris mandāta<sup>94</sup> dēferret, cēperant atque in vincula<sup>95</sup>  
conjēcerant; tum, proeliō factō, remisērunt. In petendā pāce  
ējus reī culpam<sup>96</sup> in multitudīnem contulērunt<sup>97</sup> et propter im-  
prudentiam<sup>98</sup> ut sibi ignōscerētur<sup>99</sup> petivērunt. Caesar, questus<sup>100</sup> 100

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**cursum, ūs, running, course, career, passage.**

**dēferō, dēferre, dētulī, dēlātus, irreg., tr., bring from, bring down, carry, report, refer.**

<sup>91</sup> Caesar had ordered the cavalry to embark at a different port. They had failed to leave when the wind was favorable and were delayed three days.

<sup>92</sup> **prīstinus, a, um, former.**

<sup>93</sup> **imperāvisset;** subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, Gr. 663, 665.

<sup>94</sup> **mandātum, ī, command, order** (neuter singular of **mandātus**—from **mandō, 1, tr., order**—used as a noun).

<sup>95</sup> **vinculum, ī, chain.**

<sup>96</sup> **culpa, ae, blame, fault.**

<sup>97</sup> **culpam . . . contulērunt:** *they laid the blame upon the rabble* (T. Rice Holmes).

<sup>98</sup> **imprudentia, ae, ignorance, indiscretion.**

<sup>99</sup> **ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtum, 3, intr.; w. dat., forgive, pardon.** Here used impersonally, Gr. 741; 331-332.

<sup>100</sup> **queror, querī, questus sum, 3, tr. and intr., complain.**

quod,<sup>101</sup> cum ultrō<sup>102</sup> in Galliam lēgātis missis pācem ā sē peti-  
vissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, sē eīs ignōscere<sup>103</sup> dīxit  
obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem  
ex longinquiōribus<sup>104</sup> locis arcessitam paucis diēbus sēsē datūrōs  
105 dīxērunt. Intereā suōs revertī in agrōs jussērunt, prīncipēsque  
undique convenīre et sē civitatēsque suās Caesarī commendāre<sup>105</sup>  
coepērunt.

THE CAVALRY TRANSPORTS AGAIN  
ATTEMPT TO REACH BRITAIN

Hīs rēbus pāce cōfirmātā, post diem quārtum quam<sup>106</sup> est  
in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs duodēvigintī,<sup>107</sup> dē quibus suprā  
110 dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū  
lēnī<sup>108</sup> ventō nāvēs solvērunt.<sup>109</sup> Quae cum appropinquārent Bri-  
tanniae et ex castris vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō orta est,  
ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem<sup>110</sup> unde  
erant profectae referrentur, aliae ad inferiōrem<sup>111</sup> partem insulae,  
115 quae est propius<sup>112</sup> sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō dē-  
jicerentur; quae tamen, ancoris jactis, cum flūctibus<sup>113</sup> com-  
plērentur, necessariō<sup>114</sup> continentem<sup>115</sup> petivērunt.

<sup>101</sup> quod, conj., *because*; causal clause giving Caesar's reason; hence the sub-  
junctive, Gr. 573.

<sup>102</sup> ultrō, adv., *of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously.*

<sup>103</sup> ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtum, 3, intr.; w. dat., *forgive, pardon.*

<sup>104</sup> longinquus, a, um, *distant, remote.*

<sup>105</sup> commendō, 1, tr., *entrust, surrender.*

<sup>106</sup> post diem quārtum quam = diē quārtō postquam.

<sup>107</sup> duodēvigintī, *eighteen.*

<sup>108</sup> lēnis, e, *gentle, smooth.*

<sup>109</sup> solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, 3, tr., *loosen*; w. nāvēs, *set sail, put to sea.*

<sup>110</sup> eōdem, adv., *to the same place.*

<sup>111</sup> inferior, inferius, *lower.*

<sup>112</sup> propius, prep. w. acc., *nearer.*

<sup>113</sup> flūctus, ūs, *wave.*

<sup>114</sup> necessariō, adv., *necessarily, of necessity.*

<sup>115</sup> continēns, continentis, f., *the continent.*

## A DISASTROUS STORM

Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna<sup>116</sup> plēna, quī diēs<sup>117</sup> maritimōs<sup>118</sup> aestūs<sup>119</sup> maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōsuēvit, nostrisque id erat incognitum.

120

“The result was that the galleys, in which Caesar had brought over troops, and which he had drawn up on dry land, were waterlogged, while the transports, which were at anchor, were damaged by the storm, and the men were unable to be of any service or go to their assistance. Several ships were wrecked; the rest were rendered useless by the loss of their rigging, anchors, and other fittings; and naturally the whole army was seized by panic.”<sup>120</sup>

Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus in Galliam trānsportārī

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

accidit, accidere, accidit, 3, intr.; ut (ut nōn), *it happens*.  
trānsportō, 1, tr., *transport*.

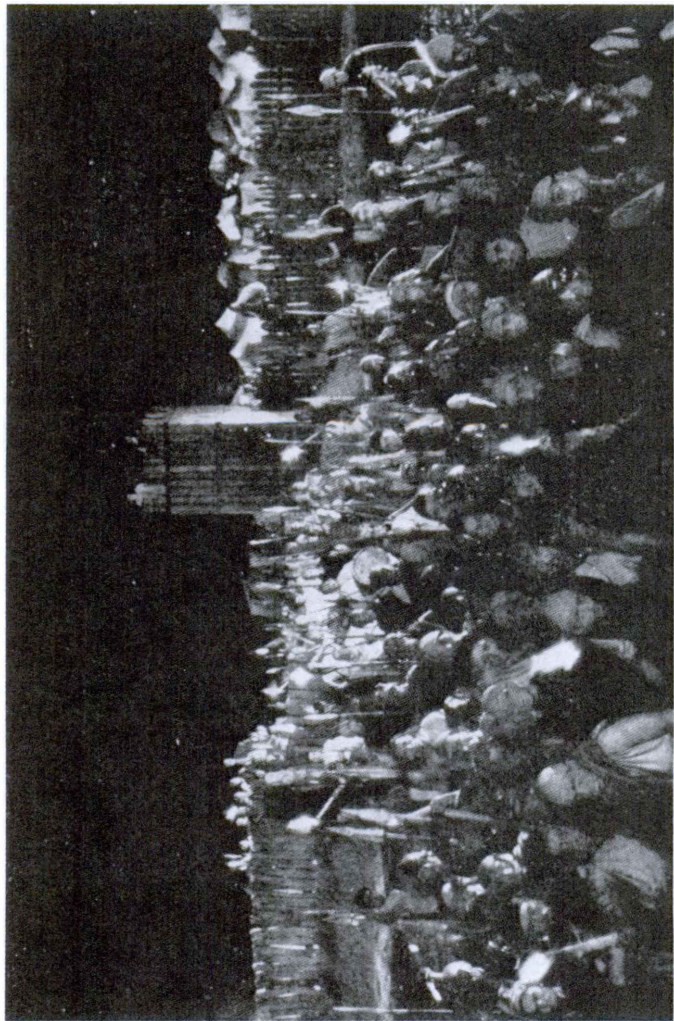
<sup>116</sup> lūna, ae, *moon*.

<sup>117</sup> quī diēs; i. e., the day of the full moon. There was a full moon in 55 B. C. on the night of August 30.

<sup>118</sup> maritimus a, um, *of the sea, maritime*.

<sup>119</sup> aestus, ūs, *tide*. The Romans were accustomed to the mild inland sea, their own Mediterranean, where the tides rise only a few inches. They were quite unused to the aestūs maximī and the fierce storms of the Atlantic. The average rise and fall of the tide at Deal is put at about sixteen feet. The Roman ships, built for the conditions in the Mediterranean were, as we have seen in the war with the Veneti, unsuited to the Atlantic and quite different from the ships of these regions.

<sup>120</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes. p. 119. Storms have ever since been important factors in operations around the English Channel. The Spanish Armada was dispersed and almost annihilated by storms in the summer of 1588. Stormy weather discouraged Napoleon in his invasion plan. Between June 19 and 22, 1944 a violent storm broke on the American bridgehead at Omaha Beach in France. The artificial harbor was heavily damaged and, in the course of the storm, eighty-two vessels were lost.



—Courtesy of *Produzione Consorzio Scipione S. A.*

**THE ROMAN CAMP BY NIGHT**

possent,<sup>121</sup> et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūtilia et frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem<sup>122</sup> prōvīsum<sup>123</sup> nōn erat.

#### THE BRITONS PLAN A REBELLION

Quibus rēbus cognitīs, princīpēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et equitēs et <sup>125</sup> nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent, et paucitatem<sup>124</sup> mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitate<sup>125</sup> cognōscerent (quae erant etiam angustiōra quod sine impedimentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat), cōstituērunt, rebelliōne<sup>126</sup> factā, commeātū<sup>127</sup> nostrōs prohibēre, et rem in hiemem prōdūcere quod, hīs superātīs <sup>130</sup> aut reditū<sup>128</sup> interclūsīs,<sup>129</sup> nēminem posteā bellī inferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōfidēbant. Itaque, rūsus conjūrātiōne factā, paulātim<sup>130</sup> ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

reficiō, reficere, refēcī, refectus, 3, tr., *repair*.

colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum, 3, intr., *converse, confer*.

prōdūcō, prōdūcere, prōdūxī, prōductus, 3, tr., *lead forth, protract*.

rūsus, adv., *again*.

clam, adv., *secretly*.

<sup>121</sup> *possent*; subjunctive in a relative characteristic clause; Gr. 633.

<sup>122</sup> *in hiemem*: *for the winter*; *in*, like *ad*, is often used with the accusative to express purpose.

<sup>123</sup> *prōvideō, prōvidēre, prōvidī, prōvīsus*, 2, tr., *care for, provide*.

<sup>124</sup> *paucitās, paucitātis, fewness, small number*.

<sup>125</sup> *exiguitās, exiguitātis, smallness*.

<sup>126</sup> *rebelliō, rebelliōnis, renewal of war, rebellion, revolt*.

<sup>127</sup> *commeātus, ūs, supplies*.

<sup>128</sup> *reditus, ūs, return*.

<sup>129</sup> *interclūdō, interclūdere, interclūsī, interclūsus*, 3, tr., *shut off, cut off*.

<sup>130</sup> *paulātim*, adv., *gradually*.

## CAESAR'S MEASURES

135 At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventū<sup>131</sup> navium suarum et ex eo quod reliquos obsides non dederant, fore<sup>132</sup> id quod accidit suspicabatur.<sup>133</sup> Itaque ad omnes casus<sup>134</sup> subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie<sup>135</sup> in castra conferēbat et, quae gravissimē afflictae<sup>136</sup> erant  
140 navēs, earum materiā<sup>137</sup> et aere<sup>138</sup> ad reliquas reficiendās<sup>139</sup> utebatur, et quae ad eas res erant usui<sup>140</sup> ex Galliā comparari jubebat. Itaque, cum summō studiō a militibus administraretur, duodecim<sup>141</sup> navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commodē<sup>142</sup> posset<sup>143</sup> effecit.

## THE BRITONS ATTACK THE SEVENTH LEGION

145 Dum<sup>144</sup> ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine<sup>145</sup> una in agris missa, quae appellabatur septima,<sup>146</sup> neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspitione<sup>147</sup> interposita,<sup>148</sup> cum<sup>149</sup> pars hominum in agris maneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret,<sup>150</sup> ei qui pro portis

<sup>131</sup> *eventus, ūs, outcome, issue.*

<sup>132</sup> *fore = futurus (a, um) esse; Gr. 360.*

<sup>133</sup> *suspicio, 1, tr., suspect, surmise.*

<sup>134</sup> *casus, ūs, accident, misfortune.*

<sup>135</sup> *cotidie, adv., daily.*

<sup>136</sup> *affligo, affligere, affixi, afflictus, 3, tr., damage.*

<sup>137</sup> *materia, ae, material, timber.*

<sup>138</sup> *aes, aeris, n., copper.*

<sup>139</sup> *reficio, reficere, refeci, refectus, 3, tr., repair.*

<sup>140</sup> *usui; dative of purpose, Gr. 729.*

<sup>141</sup> *duodecim, twelve.*

<sup>142</sup> *comode, readily, easily.*

<sup>143</sup> *navigari posset; impersonal construction.*

<sup>144</sup> *dum, conj., while; present indicative expressing past time, Gr. 569.*

<sup>145</sup> *consuetudo, consuetudinis, custom, practice.*

<sup>146</sup> *septimus, a, um, seventh.*

<sup>147</sup> *suspicio, suspitionis, suspicion.*

<sup>148</sup> *interposita: having arisen.*

<sup>149</sup> *cum, conj., when, while; Gr. 561.*

<sup>150</sup> *ventito, 1, intr., keep coming, visit.*

castrōrum in stātiōne<sup>151</sup> erant Caesarī nuntiāvērunt pulverem<sup>152</sup> mājōrem quam cōnsuētūdō ferret<sup>153</sup> in eā parte vidērī quam in 150 partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar cohortēs quae in statiōnibus<sup>151</sup> erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem succēdere,<sup>154</sup> reliquās armārī<sup>155</sup> et celeriter sēsē subsequī jussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōgressus esset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē<sup>156</sup> sustinēre et, cōnfertā<sup>157</sup> legiōne, 155 ex omnibus partibus tēla conjicī animadvertit.

“All the corn had been cut except in this one spot; and the enemy, anticipating that the Romans would come here, had lain in wait in the woods during the night; then, when the troops had laid aside their weapons and were dispersed and busy reaping, they had suddenly fallen upon them. A few were killed; the rest, whose ranks were not properly formed, were thrown into confusion; and the enemy’s horse and war-chariots had at the same time encompassed them.

#### SKILL OF THE CHARIOTEERS

“Chariots are used in action in the following way. First of all the charioteers drive all over the field, the warriors hurling missiles; and generally they throw the enemy’s ranks into confusion by the mere terror inspired by their horses and the clatter of the wheels. As soon as they have penetrated between the troops of cavalry, the warriors jump off the chariots and fight on foot. The drivers meanwhile gradually withdraw from the action, and range the cars in such a position that, if the warriors are hard pressed

<sup>151</sup> *statiō, statiōnis, military post, guard duty.*

<sup>152</sup> *pulvis, pulveris, m.. dust.*

<sup>153</sup> *quam cōnsuētūdō ferret: than usual; ferret, fēcisset; subjunctives in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse depending on nuntiāvērunt, Gr. 663-665. Translate as indicative.*

<sup>154</sup> *in statiōnem succēdere: to take over the guard duty.*

<sup>155</sup> *armō, 1, tr., arm.*

<sup>156</sup> *aegrē, adv., with difficulty, scarcely.*

<sup>157</sup> *cōnfertus, a, um, crowded together.*

by the enemy's numbers, they may easily get back to them. Thus they exhibit in action the mobility of cavalry combined with the steadiness of infantry; and they become so efficient from constant practice and training that they will drive their horses at full gallop, keeping them well in hand, down a steep incline, check and turn them in an instant, run along the pole, stand on the yoke, and step backwards again to the cars with the greatest nimbleness.<sup>158</sup>

### CAESAR'S ARRIVAL ENDS THE ATTACK

Quibus rēbus perturbātis nostris tempore opportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; nam ējus adventū hostēs cōstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō, ad committendum  
 160 proelium aliēnum<sup>159</sup> esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō<sup>160</sup> continuit, et, brevī tempore intermissō,<sup>161</sup> in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupātis,<sup>162</sup> eī<sup>163</sup> qui erant in agris reliquī discessērunt.

Secūtae sunt complūrēs diēs<sup>164</sup> tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in  
 165 castris continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent.<sup>165</sup>

---

#### WORD TO REMEMBER

discēdō, discēdere, discessi, discessum, 3, intr., *go away, retire, depart.*

---

<sup>158</sup> *Caesar' Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes, pp. 121-122.

<sup>159</sup> aliēnus, a, um, *unfavorable.*

<sup>160</sup> Recall that in is often omitted with the ablative of locus.

<sup>161</sup> intermittō, intermittere, intermisi, intermissus, 3, tr., *send between, make intervene.* The ablative absolute, brevī tempore intermissō, cannot well be translated literally; say: *after a short interval.*

<sup>162</sup> occupātus, a, um, *occupied.*

<sup>163</sup> eī; refers to the Britons. See lines 147-148.

<sup>164</sup> complūrēs diēs; accusative of time how long, Gr. 919.

<sup>165</sup> quae . . . continērent et . . . prohibērent; relative clause of result. Gr. 626.

## THE BRITONS ATTACK THE CAMP

Interim barbarī nuntiōs in omnēs partēs mīserunt, paucitātem-que<sup>166</sup> nostrōrum mīlitum suis nuntiāvērunt, et quanta,<sup>167</sup> Rōmānis ē castrīs expulsīs, praedae<sup>168</sup> faciendae atque in perpetuum<sup>169</sup> suī<sup>170</sup> liberandī facultās<sup>171</sup> darētur dēmōstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs<sup>172</sup> equitātūsque <sup>170</sup> coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt. Caesar, nactus equitēs circiter trīgintā,<sup>173</sup> quōs Commius, dē quō suprā dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōstituit. Commissō proeliō, diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt et sē in fugam dedērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō<sup>174</sup> secūtī <sup>175</sup> quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs occidērunt; deinde<sup>175</sup> omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs, sē in castra recēpērunt.

## THE ENEMY SUES FOR PEACE

Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**liberō**, 1, tr., *free, liberate* (cf. **liber**).

**aedificium**, ī, *building* (cf. **aedificō**).

<sup>166</sup> **paucitās**, **paucitātis**, *fewness, small number*.

<sup>167</sup> **quanta**; modifies **facultās**.

<sup>168</sup> **praeda**, ae, *plunder*.

<sup>169</sup> **in perpetuum**, *forever*.

<sup>170</sup> **suī**; plural in meaning, Gr. 877.

<sup>171</sup> **facultās**, **facultātis**, *power, opportunity, chance, resources, supply*.

<sup>172</sup> **peditātus**, ūs, *infantry*.

<sup>173</sup> **trīgintā**, *thirty*. His own cavalry had not yet been able to reach Britain.

<sup>174</sup> **tantō spatiō** . . . **quantum**: *over as great a space . . . as*.

<sup>175</sup> **deinde**, adv., *thereupon, then, next*.

180 vērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum quem ante<sup>176</sup> imperāverat duplicāvit<sup>177</sup> eōsque in Galliam addūcī jussit.

### CAESAR SAILS FOR THE CONTINENT

Ipse, idōneam tempestātem nactus, paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit;<sup>178</sup> quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem<sup>179</sup> pervērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae<sup>180</sup> duae eōsdem portūs quōs reli-  
185 quae capere nōn potuerunt, et paulō infā<sup>181</sup> delātae sunt.

### A TREACHEROUS ATTACK

Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositi<sup>182</sup> milites circiter trecenti<sup>183</sup> atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pācātōs reliquerat, spē praedae<sup>184</sup> adducti, primō<sup>185</sup> nōn ita magnō suorū numerō circumsteterunt<sup>186</sup> ac  
190 nostrōs arma pōnere jussērunt. Cum illi, orbe<sup>187</sup> factō, sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clamōrem hominū circiter milia sex<sup>188</sup> convērunt.

---

#### WORD TO REMEMBER

incolumis, e, *unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound.*

---

<sup>176</sup> ante, adv., *before.*

<sup>177</sup> duplicō, 1, tr., *double.*

<sup>178</sup> solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, 3, tr., *loosen*; w. nāvēs, *set sail.*

<sup>179</sup> continēns, continentis, f., *the continent.*

<sup>180</sup> onerāria, ae (nāvis understood), *transport.*

<sup>181</sup> infā, adv., *lower down.*

<sup>182</sup> expōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositus, 3, tr., *disembark, set on shore.*

<sup>183</sup> trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred.*

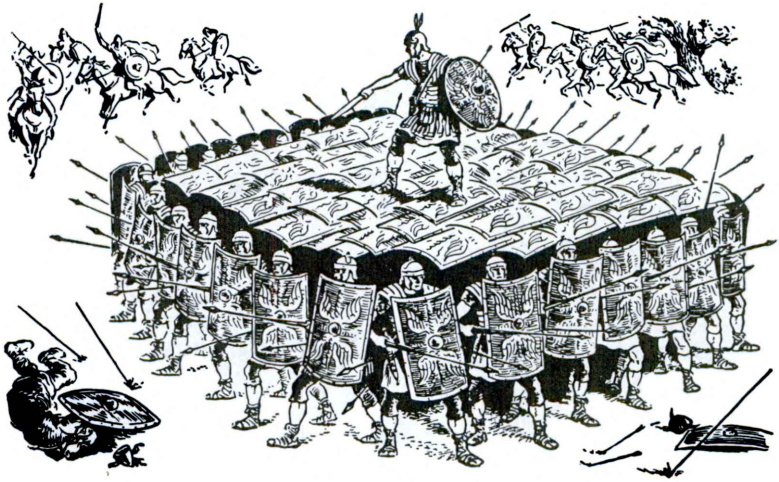
<sup>184</sup> praeda, ae, *plunder.*

<sup>185</sup> primō, adv., *at first.*

<sup>186</sup> circumstetō, circumstetere, circumstetī, 3, intr., *stand around.*

<sup>187</sup> orbis, orbis, m., *ring, circle.* Here it refers to a regular military formation used by the Romans when surrounded on all sides.

<sup>188</sup> sex, *six.*



A ROMAN ORBIS

### THE RESCUE

Quā rē nuntiātā, Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō<sup>189</sup> mīsit. Interim nostrī milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt, atque amplius hōris<sup>190</sup> quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt, <sup>195</sup> et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, complūrēs ex his occiderunt. Postea vērō quam<sup>191</sup> equitatus noster in cōspectum vēnit, hostēs, abjectis<sup>192</sup> armīs, fūgērunt, magnusque eōrum numerus est occisus.

### PUNISHMENT OF THE MORINI AND MENAPII

Caesar posterō<sup>193</sup> diē Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum, cum eīs legiōni- <sup>200</sup> bus quās ex Britannā redūxerat in Morinōs, quī rebellōnem<sup>194</sup>

<sup>189</sup> suīs auxiliō; double dative, Gr. 731.

<sup>190</sup> hōris; ablative of comparison after amplius, Gr. 777.

<sup>191</sup> postea . . . quam = posteaquam, conj., after, when, as soon as.

<sup>192</sup> abjiciō, abjicere, abjēcī, abjectus, 3, tr., throw away.

<sup>193</sup> posterus, a, um, next.

<sup>194</sup> rebellō, rebellōnis, renewal of war, rebellion, revolt.

fēcerant, mīsit. Quī omnēs ferē in potestātem<sup>195</sup> Labiēnī vēnērunt. At Quīntus Titūrius et Lūcius Cotta, lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vastātis  
 205 et aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapii sē omnēs in dēnsissimās<sup>196</sup> silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

#### WINTER QUARTERS

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hiberna cōstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britannīā obsidēs mīsērunt; reliquae neglēxērunt.

---

#### WORD TO REMEMBER

neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglētus, 3, tr., *disregard, neglect.*

---



---

<sup>195</sup> potestās, potestātis, *power.*

<sup>196</sup> dēnsus, a, um, *thick, dense.*

## 8. REBELLION IN THE NORTH

### CAST OF CHARACTERS IN ORDER OF APPEARANCE

**GAIUS ARPINEIUS**, a Roman knight and a friend of Sabinus, one of the commanders.

**QUINTUS JUNIUS**, a Spaniard, often employed by Caesar as an ambassador to Ambiorix, the rebel leader.

**EBURONES**, the Eburones, a tribe in northern Gaul, in rebellion.

**LUCIUS AURUNCULEIUS COTTA**, a lieutenant on the staff of Caesar, cocommander of the outpost together with his senior officer, Sabinus.

**QUINTUS TITURIUS SABINUS**, senior officer and cocommander of the outpost.

**CARNUTES**, the Carnutes, a tribe in north central Gaul. They have just previously murdered their pro-Roman king.

**TASGETIUS**, made king of the Carnutes through Caesar's influence; assassinated shortly after Caesar's return from Britain.

**AMBIORIX**, a chief of the Eburones. He and Catuvolcus each ruled a half of the tribe.

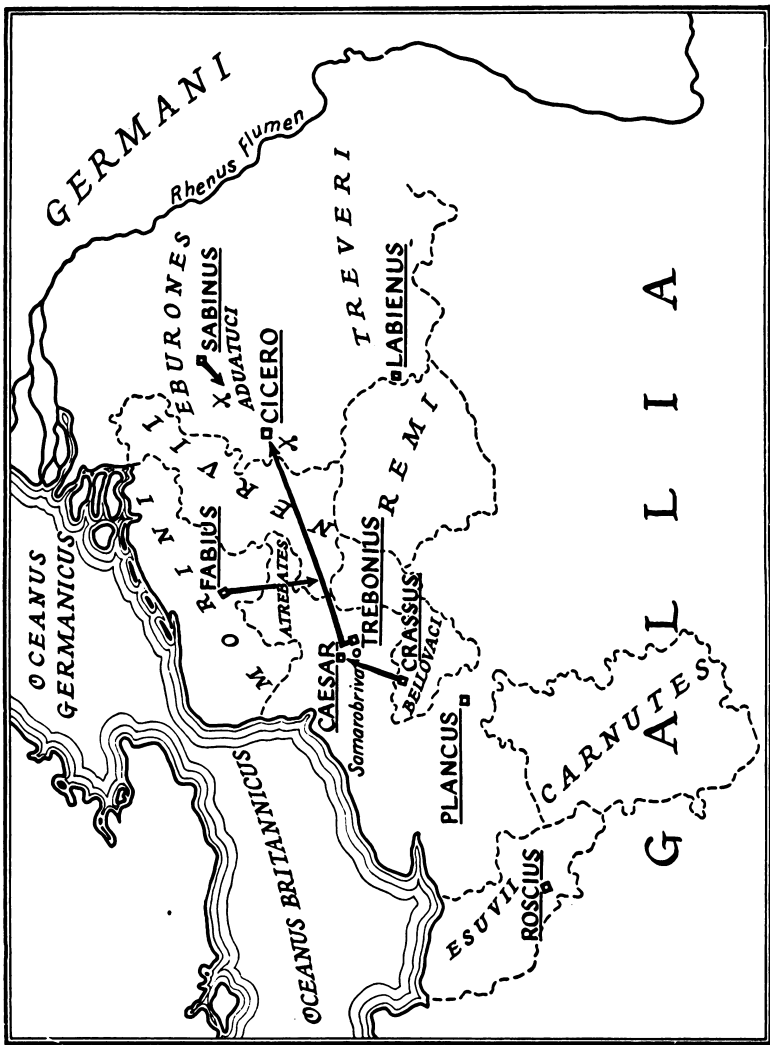
**LUCIUS PETROSIDIUS**, a courageous Roman standard-bearer.

**ADUATUCI**, the Aduatuci, a tribe in northeastern Gaul, in rebellion.

**NERVII**, the Nervii, the bravest of the Belgians, who had almost defeated Caesar in an earlier struggle.

<b>CEUTRONES</b>	}	Belgian tribes tributary to the Nervii.
<b>GRUDII</b>		
<b>LEVACI</b>		
<b>PLEUMOXII</b>		
<b>GEIDUMNI</b>		

**QUINTUS CICERO**, brother of Rome's greatest orator, Marcus Tullius Cicero, and lieutenant on the staff of Caesar; commander of the winter quarters among the Nervii.



VERTICO, a pro-Roman Nervian in Cicero's camp.

AN UNNAMED GAUL, Vertico's slave, who carries the message to Caesar.

BELLOVACI, the Bellovaci, a restless tribe among whom Crassus and his men were garrisoned.

MARCUS CRASSUS, a quaestor on the staff of Caesar; in charge of the winter quarters among the Bellovaci.

GAIUS FABIUS, a lieutenant on the staff of Caesar, in charge of the winter quarters among the Morini.

ATREBATES, the Atrebates, a Belgic tribe; untrustworthy.

TREVERI, the Treveri, a powerful tribe ever ready for rebellion.

#### PROLOGUE

In the summer of 54 the Gauls, though quiet, were in a dangerous mood. To the proud nobles, the murder of Gauls of high rank, the ruthless suppression of the Belgians and the Veneti, the constant exactions of grain and cavalry, were continued insult and galling oppression. Pressure of Roman occupation was driving people and leaders to unity of resistance and to desperate extremes.

The Belgians were the most warlike and the least subdued of all the tribes. Hence Caesar, in distributing his forces for the winter (54-53), placed the bulk of them among the Belgians. Gaius Fabius with one legion he quartered among the Morini, whose savagery he had experienced on his return from Britain; Quintus Cicero among the Nervii, the boldest of the Belgians; Labienus close to the western frontier of the Treveri, whom he knew he could not trust. Trebonius, Marcus Crassus, and Plancus, with a legion each, were stationed farther west, while one legion, under Roscius, was even sent off to the Esuvii. Yet another detachment, a legion of raw recruits and five cohorts of veterans, was encamped at Aduatuca. Caesar himself, in view of the temper of the tribes, determined to stay on in Gaul for the early winter and made his headquarters at Samarobriua.

Soon the tribes of the north were in a ferment of conspiracy. Acting swiftly and secretly, Indutiomarus, a patriot and a personal enemy of Caesar, induced the chiefs of the Eburones, Ambiorix and Catuvolcus, to attack the isolated camp at Aduatuca. They are repulsed, but ask for a conference. Accordingly, Arpineius and Junius are sent out to parley. Ambiorix professes to be acting in a general revolt of Gaul; all the camps are being surprised; the Germans are on the march and even now they are crossing the Rhine; no help can be expected. But, in return for personal favors he has received from Caesar, he will allow Sabinus to march his men out of his land to safety. If Sabinus stays, his doom only awaits the arrival, within a few days, of the Germanic host. Arpineius and Junius return to the camp.

## ACT I

## TRAGEDY AT ADUATUCA

**TIME:** The winter of 54-53 B. C.

**PLACE:** An outpost in the territory of the barbarous and half-subdued Eburones, where a legion of raw recruits and five cohorts of veterans (about six thousand men) are wintering under the command of Lieutenants Sabinus and Cotta.

**SCENE I:** A cleared space in the center of the Roman camp. In the background the soldiers are crowded, anxiously listening. In the center the officers are arguing violently. Night comes on and the flickering light of the oil lamps is reflected from the Roman weapons, throwing into relief the stern features of the officers assembled.

Arpīnējus et Jūnius quae audīverant ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī,

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

Gājus (ī) Arpīnējus (ī), *Gaius Arpineius*.

Quīntus (ī) Jūnius (ī), *Quintus Junius*.

repentinā rē perturbātī, etsi ab hoste ea dicēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda esse<sup>1</sup> exīstimābant, maximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod civitātem humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam esse vix erat crēdendum.<sup>2</sup> Itaque ad concili- 5 um rem dēferunt; magnaue inter eōs existit contrōversia. Lūcius Aurunculējus complūrēsq̄ tribūnī mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs<sup>3</sup> nihil temere agendum<sup>4</sup> neque ex hibernīs injussū Caesaris discēdendum<sup>5</sup> exīstimābant; magnās etiam cōpiās Germānōrum sustinēri posse, mūnītīs hibernīs, docēbant; rem<sup>6</sup> esse 10

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**repentinus**, a, um, *sudden, unexpected.*

**humilis**, e, *low, weak, humble* (cf. humble, humiliating).

**Eburōnēs**, Eburōnum, m., *the Eburones* (ēb ū rō'nēs), a Gallic tribe. See map, page 126.

**suā sponte**, *of his (their) own accord; meā sponte*, *of my own accord; tuā sponte*, *of your own accord*, etc.

**audeō**, **audēre**, **ausus sum**, 2, intr.; w. infin., *dare* (cf. **audāx**; audacious, audacity); semi-deponent, Gr. 345.

**vix**, adv., *hardly, barely, with difficulty.*

**existō**, **existere**, **exstitī**, 3, intr., *arise, ensue.*

**contrōversia**, ae, *dispute, quarrel, controversy* (cf. controvert, controversial).

**Lūcius** (ī) **Aurunculējus** (ī) **Cotta** (ae), *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta.*

**temere**, adv., *rashly, blindly, without good reason.*

**injussū**; w. gen., *without the order (of).*

**doceō**, **docēre**, **docuī**, **doctus**, 2, tr.; w. two accs.; acc. w. infin., *show, teach, inform* (cf. doctor, doctrine). See Gr. 751.

<sup>1</sup> The accusative subject of *neglegenda esse* is understood.

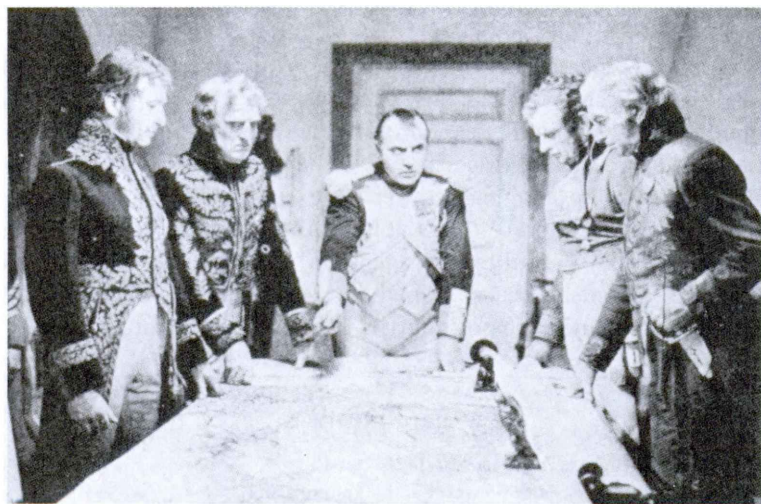
<sup>2</sup> *quod . . . erat crēdendum*; a noun clause in apposition to *hāc rē*, Gr. 657-658. Translate *quod that*. The subject of *erat crēdendum* is the accusative with the infinitive, *civitātem ausam esse*.

<sup>3</sup> *prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs*: *centurions of the first grade.*

<sup>4</sup> *agendum*; *understand esse*.

<sup>5</sup> *discēdendum*; *understand esse*.

<sup>6</sup> *rem*: *experience*; *rem . . . capere cōnsilium* (line 15) is indirect discourse depending on *docēbant*.



—Courtesy of Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer

#### NAPOLEON AND HIS STAFF

The same hills and valleys that Caesar studied came under the calculating eyes of this 'brain trust' of strategy during the wars waged by Napoleon against the Austrians and the Prussians. Caesar, however, was forced to rely on personal observation and the information gained from scouts and natives, as the splendid maps of modern war departments were quite unknown. Yet his description of the topography and his strategic use of hills, valleys, and rivers are still object lessons for the modern strategist.

testimōniō,<sup>7</sup> quod primum hostium impetum, multis vulneribus illatis, fortissimē sustinuerint;<sup>8</sup> rē frumentāriā nōn premī: intereā

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

testimōnium, ī, *testimony, evidence, witness* (cf. testament, testify, testimonial, testimony).

rēs (reī) frumentāria (ae), *supplies*. (Notice how rēs frequently enters into combinations with adjectives, as: rēs pūblica, *the state*; rēs militāris, *warfare*, etc.)

---

<sup>7</sup> testimōniō: lit., (*for a proof*); dative of purpose, Gr. 729.

<sup>8</sup> quod . . . sustinuerint; causal clause, Gr. 572, 665. Primary sequence is used because the event referred to has just happened.

et ex proximīs hibernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō, quid esset<sup>9</sup> levius aut turpius quam auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium? 15

Contrā ea Titūrius sērō facturōs<sup>10</sup> clāmitābat, cum mājorēs manūs hostium, adjunctīs Germānīs, convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis<sup>11</sup> in proximīs hibernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōsulendī esse occāsiōnem; Caesarem sē arbitrārī profectum<sup>12</sup> in

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**postrēmō**, adv., *finally, at last*.

**levis**, e, *light, light-minded* (cf. levity).

**turpis**, e, *ugly, shameful, disgraceful* (cf. turpitude).

**auctor**, auctōris, *adviser, promoter, instigator*.

**sērō**, adv., *too late, late*.

**clāmitō**, 1, tr., *cry out repeatedly, exclaim*. (The ending -itō indicates a repetition of the action expressed in the stem, e. g. clāmō, *I shout*, clām-itō, *I keep shouting*; veniō, *I come*, ventitō, *I keep coming*.)

**aliquis**, aliquid, indefinite pronoun, *someone, something, anyone, anything*; Gr. 815.

**calamitās**, calamitātis, *disaster, misfortune* (cf. clamitous, calamity).

**cōsulō**, cōsulere, cōsului, cōsultus, 3, tr. and intr., *consult, take counsel*; w. dat., *take counsel for, consult the interests of*.

**occāsiō**, occāsiōnis, *occasion, opportunity*.

<sup>9</sup> **esset**; rhetorical question in indirect discourse, Gr. 666.

<sup>10</sup> **facturōs**; accusative subject is understood. Indirect discourse depending on clāmitābat continues down to **esset timenda** (line 34).

<sup>11</sup> **aliquid calamitātis**; **calamitātis** is a partitive genitive, Gr. 686-687. We would simply say *some disaster, a disaster*.

<sup>12</sup> **Caesarem profectum (esse)** depends on arbitrārī. Communication was slow and difficult. At this remote outpost the Roman officers could not be certain of Caesar's movements, but they knew that the Gauls became bolder and more active when Caesar was out of the country. As a matter of fact Caesar had remained in Gaul and was at Samarobriua, about two hundred miles away. The nearest Roman camp—that of Cicero—was at a distance of about forty-five miles. See map, page 126.

- 20 Italiam; neque<sup>13</sup> aliter Carnutēs interficiendī Tasgetiī<sup>14</sup> cōsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne<sup>15</sup> nostrī<sup>16</sup> ad castra ventūrōs esse. Sēsē<sup>17</sup> nōn hostem auctōrem sed rem spectāre: subesse Rhēnum; magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī<sup>18</sup> Ariovistī mortem<sup>19</sup> et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās;

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**aliter**, adv., *otherwise*. (Latin adverbs frequently end in *-ter*; cf. *diligenter*, Gr. 107; *ācriter*, Gr. 106; *aliter* is formed on *alius*.)

**Carnutēs**, Carnutum, m., *the Carnutes* (kār'nū tēz), a Gallic tribe.

**Tasgetius**, ī, *Tasgetius* (tās jē'shī ūs), a chief of the Carnutes.

**adsum**, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus, irreg., intr., *am present, am near*.

**contemptiō**, contemptiōnis, *contempt, disdain*.

**spectō**, ī, tr., *look at, regard, face*.

**subsum**, subesse, subfuī, irreg., intr., *am under, am near, am close at hand*.

**Ariovistus**, ī, *Ariovistus*, a German king.

<sup>13</sup> The beginning of a contrary-to-fact condition in indirect discourse; *neque aliter . . . ventūrōs esse*. Translate *fuisse captūrōs*: *would have made*; *adesset*: *were present*; *ventūrōs esse*: *would have come*.

<sup>14</sup> Tasgetius, a pro-Roman Gaul, made king of the Carnutes by Caesar, had recently been assassinated. *Ille* refers to Caesar, Gr. 792.

<sup>15</sup> *tantā contemptiōne*; what kind of ablative? See Gr. 769.

<sup>16</sup> *nostrī*; an objective genitive, Gr. 684; hence the form *nostrī* is used, Gr. 123, footnote 2. The genitive is governed by the verbal idea in the noun *contemptiōne* (i. e., they contemn *us*).

<sup>17</sup> *sēsē*; an emphatic form of *sē*, Gr. 127.

<sup>18</sup> *magnō esse Germānīs dolōrī*; double dative, Gr. 731. How is *magnō* emphasized by its position?

<sup>19</sup> How Ariovistus died is not known, but Sabinus' remark would seem to indicate that his death was probably attributed to the Romans.

ardere Galliam, tot contumēliis acceptis, sub populī Rōmānī 25  
imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī militāris exstinctā.  
Postrēmō, quis hoc<sup>20</sup> sibi persuādēret sine certā spē Ambiorigem  
ad ējusmodī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utram-  
que partem esse tūtam: si nihil esset dūrius, nullō cum periculō  
ad proximam legiōnem<sup>21</sup> perventūrōs;<sup>22</sup> sī Gallia omnis cum 30  
Germānis cōsentiret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem.  
Cottae quidem atque eōrum quī dissentirent cōnsilium quem

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**ardeō, ardere, ārsī, ārsum, 2, intr., burn, blaze, am inflamed** (cf. arson).

**contumēlia, ae, indignity, affront, injury** (cf. contumely).

**redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctus, 3, tr., bring under, reduce.**

**rēs (reī) militāris (is), warfare, military matters, science of warfare** (cf. *rēs frumentāria*).

**extinguō, extinguere, exstīnxi, exstīnctus, 3, tr., put out, quench, destroy** (cf. extinguish).

**Ambiorix, Ambiorīgis, Ambiorix, a chief of the Eburones.**

**ējusmodī, of such a kind; genitive of description, ējus agreeing with the genitive of modus, ī, kind, manner.**

**dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendi, dēscensum, 3, intr., climb down, descend, resort to** (cf. descend).

**dūrus, a, um, hard, rough, severe.**

**cōnsentiō, cōsentire, cōsēnsī, cōsēnsū, 4, intr., think together, agree** (con [= cum] + sentiō. In compounds con- implies *together, all together, with*, etc.; cf. *cōsēnsus*; consent).

**quidem, adv., indeed, at least, truly.**

**dissentiō, dissentire, dissēnsī, dissēnsū, 4, intr., differ, disagree** (dis + sentiō; *dis-* in compounds signifies separation, *apart*, etc.; cf. *dissension, dissent*).

<sup>20</sup> *hoc*; object of the dative verb *persuādēre*, Gr. 755. The following accusative with the infinitive is in apposition with *hoc*.

<sup>21</sup> *ad proximam legiōnem*; i. e., in the next winter quarters.

<sup>22</sup> *perventūrōs*; subject accusative *sē* and *esse* understood.

habēret exitum?<sup>23</sup> In quō sī nōn praesēns periculum, at certē longinquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.

- 35 Hāc in utramque partem disputatiōne habitā, cum<sup>24</sup> ā Cottā primisque ordinibus<sup>25</sup> ācritē resisterētur,<sup>26</sup> “vincite,” inquit, “sī ita vultis,” Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; “neque is sum,” inquit, “quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis periculō terrear.<sup>27</sup> Hī sapient; sī gravius quid<sup>28</sup> acciderit, 40 abs tē ratiōnem repositent; quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proximīs hibernīs conjunctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**exitus**, ūs, *exit, outcome, result* (formed on the participial stem of **exeō**).

**praesēns** (*gen. praesentis*), *present*.

**longinquus**, a, um, *distant, remote, long*.

**obsidiō**, obsidiōnis, *siege*.

**famēs**, famis, *hunger, starvation* (cf. *famine*).

**disputatiō**, disputatiōnis, *argument, discussion*.

**clārus**, a, um, *clear, loud*.

**exaudiō**, 4, tr., *hear*.

**sapiō**, sapere, sapivī, 3, intr., *am wise, understand*.

**quis**, **quid**, indefinite pronoun, *anyone, anything, someone, something*; Gr. 841.

**abs**; form of preposition **ab** used before **tē**.

**repscō**, **repscere**, 3, tr., *demand back, exact* (**re** + **poscō**; **re-** in compounds usually adds the idea of *again* or *back*, as in the English *reread* and *return*).

**perendinus**, a, um, *after tomorrow*; **perendinō diē**: *on the day after tomorrow*. (We have no adjective in English equivalent to **perendinus**.)

<sup>23</sup> **quem habēret exitum**; what sort of question? See note 9, page 131.

<sup>24</sup> **cum**, *since*; Gr. 578.

<sup>25</sup> **primīs ordinibus** = **primōrum ordinum centuriōnibus**. See note 3, page 129.

<sup>26</sup> **resisterētur**; impersonal use, Gr. 331-332, in the passive of a dative verb, Gr. 740-741. Of course the object (in the dative) is often, as here, not expressed. In translating, the clause might well be changed to the active.

<sup>27</sup> **quī . . . terrear**; relative clause of result, Gr. 550, 626, or characteristic, Gr. 633, 636.

<sup>28</sup> **quid**; indefinite pronoun, Gr. 841.



A CONFERENCE IN THE ROMAN CAMP

cāsum sustineant, nōn rejectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs aut ferrō aut fame intereant.”<sup>29</sup>

Cōnsurgitur<sup>30</sup> ex conciliō ; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant nē

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**cāsus, ūs**, *chance, misfortune, crisis, fate*; **cāsū**, *by chance* (cf. a casual remark).  
**relēgō**, 1, tr., *send away, remove*.

**cēterī**, ae, a, *the rest (of), the remainder*; Gr. 829.

**ferrum**, ī, *iron, steel*; anything made of iron—*sword, spear point*, etc.

**intereō**, **interīre**, **interiī**, **interitum**, irreg., intr., *perish, die* (**inter** + **eō**).

**cōnsurgō**, **cōnsurgere**, **cōnsurrēxī**, **cōnsurrēctum**, 3, intr., *rise together, arise* (cf. resurrection, insurgent, insurrection, surge).

**comprehendō**, **comprehendere**, **comprehendī**, **comprēhēnsus**, 3, tr., *grasp, seize, arrest, take* (cf. comprehend, apprehend, comprehension).

<sup>29</sup> These are not, of course, the exact words used by Sabinus. Caesar is writing up the reports which he gathered later. Notice the forceful rhetoric of the concluding clause. Caesar was himself one of the outstanding orators of his time; he was known as a direct and forceful speaker. The speeches which he inserts in his account of the Gallic War indicate that his reputation was well deserved.

<sup>30</sup> **cōnsurgitur**; used impersonally, Gr. 331-332. Translate by an English personal verb.

- 45 suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant :  
facilem esse rem, seu maneant seu proficiācantur, sī modo ūnum  
ōmnēs sēntiant et probent ; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salū-  
tem perspicere.<sup>31</sup> Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur.  
Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs :<sup>32</sup> superat sententia Sabīnī.

SCENE II: The Roman camp in the semidarkness just before dawn. Confused sounds of muffled speech and hasty preparations are heard.

- 50 Prōnuntiātur primā lūce itūrōs.<sup>33</sup> Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua  
pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid sēcum  
portāre posset, quid ex instrūmentō hibernōrum relinquere cō-

WORDS TO REMEMBER

dissēnsiō, dissēnsiōnis, *disagreement, dissension* (cf. *dissentiō*).

pernācia, ae, *obstinacy, stubbornness* (cf. *pertinacy*; *per, through + teneō, hold*).

seu . . . seu, *if . . . or if, whether . . . or*.

sī modo, conj., *if only*; Gr. 594.

probō, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin., *approve, prove*.

contrā, adv., *on the contrary, on the other hand*.

prōnuntiō, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin., *announce* (*prō, in front of + nuntiō, report*).

cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsi, cōnsūmptus, 3, tr., *take all at once, consume, use up* (cf. *consumption*).

quisque, quidque, *each, every*; adjective form: *quisque, quaeque, quodque*; Gr. 831-835.

circumspiciō, circumspicere, circumspexī, circumspetus, 3, tr., *look (around) for, look at, consider* (*circum, around + spiciō, look*; cf. *circumspect*—one who is cautious, who looks around).

instrūmentum, ī, *apparatus, equipment* (cf. *instrument*).

<sup>31</sup> *facilem . . . perspicere*; indirect discourse depending on the idea of saying in *ōrant*. (Therefore the sequence is primary.)

<sup>32</sup> *dat . . . manūs*; as a sign of yielding to Sabinus, who was the senior officer.

<sup>33</sup> *itūrōs*; what words are understood?

gerētur.<sup>34</sup> Primā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficiscuntur ut quibus esset persuāsum<sup>35</sup> nōn ab hoste sed ab homine amīcissimō cōnsilium datum,<sup>36</sup> longissimō agmine maximisque impedimentīs. 55

SCENE III: A wooded valley some distance from the camp. The heavy step of the pack-laden soldiers echoes through the quiet dawn.

At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliisque dē profectione eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātis insidiis bipertitō in silvis opportūnō atque occultō locō ā mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus,<sup>37</sup> Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, et cum sē mājor pars agminis in magnam convallem dēmīssisset, ex utrāque parte ējus 60 vallis subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et primōs

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

posteāquam, conj., *after, when, as soon as.*

nocturnus, a, um, *nocturnal, nightly* (cf. nox; noctū, adv., *by night*).

fremitus, ūs, *noise, uproar, din.*

insidiae, insidiarum, *ambush, treachery, plot* (cf. insidious).

bipertitō, adv., *in two parts, in two ways.*

occultus, a, um, *hidden, concealed, secret* (cf. occult).

convallis, convallis, *enclosed valley, defile.*

dēmittō, dēmittere, dēmīsī, dēmīssus, 3, tr., *send down, let down*; w. reflexive pronoun, sē, mē, etc., *come down, descend.*

vallēs, vallis, *valley* (cf. convallis).

---

<sup>34</sup> quid . . . cōgerētur; indirect questions depending on the questioning implied in sua circumspiceret.

<sup>35</sup> sīc . . . ut . . . persuāsum: *thus . . . as (those would have departed) to whom it had been persuaded.* The precautions regularly taken when marching through hostile territory were neglected. Caesar is at pains to point out the culpable negligence of Sabinus.

<sup>36</sup> datum; what word is understood?

<sup>37</sup> ā mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus: lit., *from about two miles*; i. e., *about two miles away.*



THE EBURONES ATTACK THE ROMAN COLUMN

prohibere ascēnsū<sup>38</sup> atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō<sup>39</sup> proelium committere coepērunt.

SCENE IV: The same valley now in utter confusion. Wild cries and commands mingle with the clash of arms and the groans of the dying.

“And now Titurius, having exercised no forethought, lost all

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

ascēnsus, ūs, *climbing up, ascent* (cf. dēscendō).

inīquus, a, um, *uneven, unjust, unfavorable* (cf. iniquity, iniquitous).

---

<sup>38</sup> ascēnsū; what kind of ablative? See Gr. 766.

<sup>39</sup> In expressions of place where containing locō (locīs), in is often omitted.

nerve, ran from place to place, and tried to get the cohorts into formation; but he did this nervously and in such a way that one could see he was at his wits' end, as indeed generally happens to men who are forced to decide on the spur of the moment. Cotta, on the other hand, who had foreseen that these things might happen on the march, and for that reason had declined to sanction the movement, was fully equal to the occasion: he performed a general's part in calling upon the men and encouraging them, and in action he did the work of a private soldier. Owing to the length of the column, it was not easy for the generals to look to everything themselves and make the necessary arrangements for every part of the field; they therefore ordered the word to be given to abandon the baggage and form in a square. Although, in the circumstances, the plan cannot be condemned, its effect was nevertheless disastrous; for, as it would evidently not have been resorted to but for extreme anxiety and despair, it made our soldiers despondent and stimulated the enemy's ardour for battle. Moreover, as was inevitable, soldiers were everywhere abandoning their companies, every one hurrying to the baggage-train to look for his most cherished possessions and carry them off; while the whole field was a scene of weeping and uproar."<sup>40</sup>

At barbaris cōsiliū nōn dēfuit. Nam ducēs eōrum tōtā aciē<sup>41</sup>  
prōnuntiārī jussērunt, nē quis<sup>42</sup> ab locō discēderet: illōrum esse 65

---

<sup>40</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, translated by T. Rice Holmes. London, Macmillan, 1908. pp. 150-151. This is one of the few instances in which the discipline of Caesar's men broke down. It was due, of course, very largely to the weakness and negligence of Sabinus. The morale of an army depends to a great extent upon the character of its leader.

Notice how Caesar brings out the weakness of Sabinus by contrasting his behavior with that of the soldierly Cotta.

<sup>41</sup> *tōtā aciē*; when *tōtus* is used in an expression of place where, *in* is more generally omitted.

<sup>42</sup> *nē quis*; the indefinite *quis* is regularly used after negatives, Gr. 841. *Nē* introduces a command in indirect discourse depending on *prōnuntiārī*, Gr. 663, 665.

praedam atque illis reservārī quaecumque Rōmānī reliquissent; proinde omnia in victōriā posita existimārent.<sup>43</sup> Nostrī, tametsī ab duce et ā fortūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat,<sup>44</sup> ab  
 70 eā parte<sup>45</sup> magnus numerus hostium cadēbat.<sup>44</sup> Quā rē animadversā, Ambiorix prōnuntiārī jubet, ut<sup>46</sup> procul tēla conjiciant<sup>47</sup> neu propius accēdant<sup>47</sup> et, quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant,<sup>47</sup> rūsus sē<sup>48</sup> ad signa recipientēs insequantur.<sup>47</sup>

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**praeda**, ae, *prey, plunder*.

**reservō**, 1, tr., *keep back, reserve* (re, back + servō, save).

**quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**, general relative pronoun, *whoever, whatever*.

**proinde**, adv., *hence, accordingly*.

**tametsī**, conj., *although, though*; Gr. 598.

**dēserō**, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertus, 3, tr., *abandon, desert* (cf. deserter).

**quotiēns**, temporal conj., *as often as*; Gr. 542. It may also be used as an interrogative adverb, *how often*.

**prōcurrō**, prōcurrere, prōcurrī, prōcursum, 3, intr., *run forward, rush forward, charge* (prō, in front + currō, run).

**cadō**, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, 3, intr., *fall, fall in battle*; hence: *die*. (Distinguish cecidī, *I fell*, from cecidī, *I killed*; cf. cāsus; cadence).

**procul**, adv., *afar off, from a distance*.

**neu**, conj., *and not*.

**propius**, adv., *nearer*; also used as a preposition with accusative.

<sup>43</sup> existimārent; command in indirect discourse, Gr. 663, 665.

<sup>44</sup> For the tenses of prōcurrerat and cadēbat see Gr. 542, 544.

<sup>45</sup> ab eā parte; English idiom demands: *in that section or there*.

<sup>46</sup> Ut is sometimes used to introduce a command in indirect discourse.

<sup>47</sup> conjiciant, accēdant, cēdant, insequantur; commands in indirect discourse, Gr. 663, 665. They are in the present because their sequence is governed by the main verb jubet. Jubet is an historical present, Gr. 485, and may take either primary or secondary sequence, Gr. 541.

<sup>48</sup> sē; object of recipientēs; refers to the Romans.

Quō praeceptō ab eīs diligentissimē observātō, cum quaequam cohors ex orbe excesserat<sup>49</sup> atque impetum fēcerat,<sup>49</sup> hostēs vēlō- 75  
 cissimē refugiēbant.<sup>49</sup> Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et  
 ab<sup>50</sup> latere apertō tēla recipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum unde  
 erant prōgressī revertī coeperant,<sup>51</sup> et ab eīs quī cesserant et ab  
 eīs quī proximī steterant circumveniēbantur;<sup>51</sup> sīn autem locum  
 tenēre vellent,<sup>52</sup> nec virtūtī locus relinquebātur neque ab tantā 80  
 multitūdine coniecta tēla cōfertī<sup>53</sup> vitāre poterant. Tamen tot  
 incommodīs cōflīctātī, multīs vulneribus acceptīs, resistēbant,

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

praeceptum, ī, *order, direction, command* (cf. precept).

observō, 1, tr., *observe, obey*.

quisquam, quaequam, quodpiam, indefinite adjective, *some, any*; Gr. 818.

orbis, orbis, m., *ring, circle*. See page 123.

excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessum, 3, intr., *go out, withdraw*.

vēlōciter, adv., *swiftly, quickly*.

refugiō, refugere, refūgī, refugitum, 3, intr., *flee back, retreat*.

nūdō, 1, tr., *strip, expose*.

necesse est, esse, fuit, intr.; w. infin.; acc. w. infin., *it is necessary*; Gr. 641, 892.

stō, stāre, steti, statum, 1, intr., *stand*.

sīn, conj., *but if, if however*.

vītō, 1, tr., *avoid, shun, escape*.

incommodum, ī, *disadvantage, disaster, injury*.

cōflīctō, 1, tr., *strike together*; passive, *am distressed*.

<sup>49</sup> *excesserat, fēcerat, refugiēbant*; the tenses, Gr. 542, 544, show that *cum* may well be translated *whenever*.

<sup>50</sup> *ab*; English idiom demands *on*. See note 95, page 44.

<sup>51</sup> *coeperant, circumveniēbantur*; see note 49.

<sup>52</sup> *sīn . . . vellent*: *if, on the other hand, they chose to hold their ground* (T. Rice Holmes).

<sup>53</sup> *cōnfertus, a, um, crowded together*.

et, magnā parte diēi cōsūptā, cum ā primā lūce ad hōram octāvam<sup>54</sup> pugnārētur,<sup>55</sup> nihil quod ipsīs esset indignum committēbant.

“At this moment Titus Balventius, who, in the previous year, had been chief centurion of his legion—a brave and highly-respected man—had both his thighs pierced by a javelin; Quintus Lucanius, an officer of the same rank, while trying to save his son, who had been surrounded, was killed, fighting most gallantly; and Lucius Cotta, while cheering on all the cohorts and centuries, was struck full in the face by a stone from a sling.”<sup>56</sup>

SCENE V: A section of the encompassed legion. Sabinus and Ambiorix are seen some distance apart. Hand-to-hand fighting continues on all sides.

- 85 Hīs rēbus permōtus Quīntus Titūrius, cum procul Ambiorigem suōs cohortantem cōspexisset, interpretem suum Gnaeum Pompējum ad eum mittit rogātum<sup>57</sup> ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondit: sī velit sēcum colloquī, licēre,<sup>58</sup> spērāre<sup>59</sup> ā

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

octāvus, a, um, *eighth* (cf. octave).

indignus, a, um; w. abl., *unworthy (of), disgraceful*.

interpres, interpretis, m., *interpreter*.

Gnaeus (ī) Pompējus (ī), *Gnaeus Pompeius* (nē'ūs pōm pē'(y)ūs).

parcō, parcere, pepercī, parcitūrus, 3, intr.; w. dat., *spare*.

spērō, 1, tr.; acc. w. infin. (generally future), *hope, hope for* (cf. spēs).

<sup>54</sup> ad hōram octāvam; i. e., the Romans had been fighting for about seven hours. See note 111, page 46.

<sup>55</sup> pugnārētur; contemporaneous time with committēbant; i. e., throughout the entire period of fighting the men lived up to Roman traditions.

<sup>56</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes, p. 152.

<sup>57</sup> rogātum; a supine expressing purpose, Gr. 860; *to ask*. It is exceptional for the supine in -um to govern a clause as here.

<sup>58</sup> licēre; corresponds to the impersonal indicative licet; Gr. 331.

<sup>59</sup> spērāre; the subject accusative, sē, is not expressed.

multitūdine impetrārī posse quod ad militum salūtem pertineat; ipsi<sup>60</sup> vēō nihil<sup>61</sup> nocitum irī,<sup>62</sup> inque eam rem<sup>63</sup> sē suam fidem<sup>90</sup> interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur,<sup>64</sup> pugnā<sup>65</sup> ut<sup>66</sup> excēdant et cum Ambiorīge unā colloquantur; spērāre sē ab eō dē suā ac militum salūte impetrārī<sup>67</sup> posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.<sup>68</sup>

SCENE VI: The same. Ambiorix and Sabinus are seen facing each other, surrounded by their staffs and massed troops.

Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā<sup>69</sup> tribūnōs militum circum sē habē- 95

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**impetrō**, 1, tr., *obtain (by asking)*.

**interpōnō**, **interpōnere**, **interposuī**, **interpositus**, 3, tr., *place between, interpose, cause (inter + pōnō)*.

**saucius**, a, um, *wounded*.

**commūnicō**, 1, tr., *communicate, impart*.

**videor**, **vidērī**, **vīsus sum**, 2, intr.; w. infin., *am seen, seem, seem best*.

**armō**, 1, tr., *arm, equip*.

**persevērō**, 1, intr., *persist, persevere*.

<sup>60</sup> **ipsi**; opposed to **militum** and refers to Sabinus. Ambiorix guarantees the personal safety of Sabinus and holds out hope for the soldiers.

<sup>61</sup> **nihil**; used here as an adverb.

<sup>62</sup> **nocitum irī**; future infinitive passive, Gr. 158, used impersonally (see note 58, page 142). Direct would be: **tibi nihil nocēbitur**, Gr. 740-741.

<sup>63</sup> **in eam rem**: *for that* (T. Rice Holmes).

<sup>64</sup> **sī videātur**: *if it seemed good (to him)*; i. e., *if he [Cotta] approved* (T. Rice Holmes).

<sup>65</sup> **pugnā**; what kind of ablative? See Gr. 766.

<sup>66</sup> See note 46, page 140.

<sup>67</sup> **impetrārī**; used here as equivalent to the impersonal passive indicative. See note 58, page 142.

<sup>68</sup> In the words and attitude of the wounded Cotta, Caesar saw the true spirit of the great Roman military tradition: **Aut vincendum aut moriendum!**

<sup>69</sup> **in praesentiā**: *at the moment*.



THE TREACHEROUS KILLING OF SABINUS

bat et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs<sup>70</sup> sē sequī jubet, et, cum propius Ambiorīgem accessisset, jussus arma abjicere, imperātum facit suisque<sup>71</sup> ut idem faciant imperat. Interim, dum<sup>72</sup> dē condiōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōsultō ab Ambiorīge īnstituītur sermō, paulātīm circumventus, interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi Lūcius Cotta<sup>73</sup> pugnāns

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

abjiciō, abjicere, abjēcī, abjectus, 3, tr., *throw away, throw down, hurl.*

cōsultō, adv., *deliberately, on purpose.*

īstituō, īstituere, īstituī, īstitutus, 3, tr., *set up, train, procure, build; w. infin., begin, determine.*

paulātīm, adv., *gradually.*

conclāmō, 1, intr., *shout, cry out.*

ululātus, ūs, yell, shriek.

---

<sup>70</sup> primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs: *centurions of the first grade.*

<sup>71</sup> suis; i. e., the officers who were with him, not all the Roman soldiers.

<sup>72</sup> dum, while; Gr. 569.

<sup>73</sup> Caesar always displayed a genuine regard for his officers and men and was generous in praising those who were courageous and loyal. Apparently during

interficitur cum maximā parte militum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt, unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus Lūcius Petrosidius, aquilifer, cum magnā multitudīne hostium premerētur, aquilam 105 intrā vallum prōjicit: ipse prō castris fortissimē pugnāns occīditur. Illī<sup>74</sup> aegrē ad noctem oppugnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs, dēspērātā salūte, sē ipsī interficiunt.<sup>75</sup> Paucī ex proeliō ēlāpsī incertīs itineribus per silvās ad Titum Labiēnum, lēgātum, in hiberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs cer- 110 tiōrem faciunt.

## INTERLUDE

AMBIORIX INCITES THE ADUATUCI AND NERVII  
TO ATTACK CICERO'S CAMP

Hāc victōriā<sup>76</sup> sublātus Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī erant ējus rēgnō fīnitimī, proficiscitur. Neque noctem

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

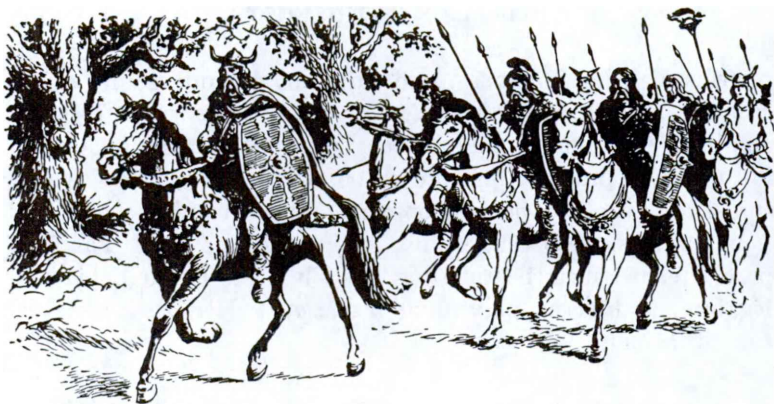
Lūcius (ī) Petrosidius (ī), *Lucius Petrosidius*.  
 aquilifer, aquiliferī, *standard-bearer* (aquila, eagle + ferō, bear).  
 intrā, prep. w. acc., *within*.  
 aegrē, adv., *with difficulty, scarcely*.  
 oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis, *siege, assault*.  
 ad ūnum: *to a man, without exception* (generally with omnēs).  
 dēspērō, 1, intr., *despair, despair of*.  
 ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus sum, 3, intr., *slip away, escape*.  
 incertus, a, um, *uncertain, indefinite, vague*.  
 Aduatucī, Aduatucōrum, *the Aduatuci* (ād ú āt'ú sī).

his inquiry into the tragic events he is here relating, he noted carefully all the personal details he could discover.

<sup>74</sup> illī; refers to those mentioned farther back, the reliquī, Gr. 792.

<sup>75</sup> sē ipsī interficiunt; note that ipsī agrees with the subject in Latin, Gr. 810. Probably they fell upon each others' swords. Roman soldiers, not being Christians, often preferred suicide to surrender.

<sup>76</sup> Hāc victōriā; Gr. 781, 782.



AMBIBORIX SETS OUT FOR THE COUNTRY OF THE ADUATUCI AND THE NERVII

neque diem intermittit peditātumque sē sequī jubet. Rē dēmōn-  
 115 strātā Aduatucisque concitātis, posterō diē in Nervios pervenit  
 hortāturque nē suī<sup>77</sup> in perpetuum liberandī atque ulciscendī  
 Rōmānōs prō eis quās accēperint injūriis occasiōnem dīmittant.  
 Interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs magnamque partem exercitūs in-  
 terisse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtīi<sup>78</sup> subitō oppressam legiōnem

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**intermittō, intermittere, intermīsī, intermissus**, 3, tr. and intr., *send between, intervene, let up, delay.*

**peditātus, ūs**, *infantry.*

**concitō**, 1, tr., *stir up, instigate.*

**Nervii, Nerviorum**, *the Nervii* (nūr'vī ī).

**in perpetuum**: *forever.*

**ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum**, 3, tr., *avenge, punish.*

**negōtium, ī**, *business, trouble, difficulty.*

**opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressus**, 3, tr., *overwhelm, destroy, surprise.*

---

<sup>77</sup> suī; Gr. 877.

<sup>78</sup> nihil . . . negōtīi; Gr. 686-687. Nihil . . . interficī is indirect d'scourse depending still on dēmōnstrat.

quae cum Cicerōne hiemet interficī. Sē ad eam rem profitētur 120  
adjūtōrem. Facile hāc orātiōne Nervii persuādet.

## ACT II

## GALLIC SUCCESSES GROW

SCENE I: The camp of Cicero in the forests of the Nervii.

Itaque, cōnfestim dīmissis nuntiis ad Ceutrōnēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam maximās possunt manūs cōgunt et dē imprōvisō ad Cicerōnis hiberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titurii morte perlātā. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn- 5  
nullī militēs, quī lignātiōnis mūnitiōnisque causā in silvās disces-  
sissent,<sup>1</sup> repentinō equitum adventū interciperentur. His circum-

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**profiteor, profitēri, professus sum**, 2, tr.; acc. w. infīn., *admit, declare, offer.*

**adjutor, adjūtōris, helper, assistant** (cf. *adjuvō*; *adjutant*).

**cōnfestim, adv.**, *at once, immediately.*

**Ceutrōnēs, Ceutrōnum, the Ceutrones** (sū'trō nēz).

**Grudii, Grudiōrum, the Grudii** (gru'dī ī).

**Levāci, Levācōrum, the Levaci** (lē vā'sī).

**Pleumoxii, Pleumoxiōrum, the Pleumoxii** (plū mōk'sī ī).

**Geidumni, Geidumnōrum, the Geidumni** (jē ī dūm'nī).

**dē imprōvisō: unexpectedly, suddenly.**

**advolō, 1, intr., fly to, rush on, rush at** (*ad* + *volō, fly*).

**fāma, ae, rumor, fame** (cf. *famous*).

**perferō, perferre, pertulī, perlātus, irreg., tr., carry through, convey, deliver, report, endure.**

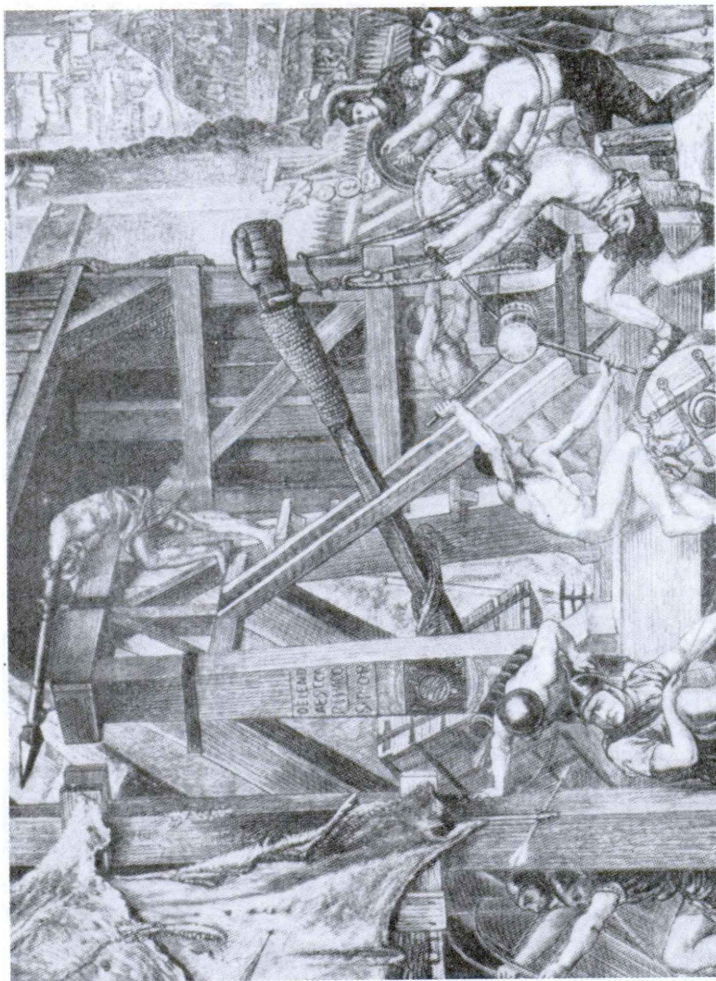
**nōnnullī, ae, a, some.**

**lignātiō, lignātiōnis, procuring of wood.**

**intercipiō, interciperere, intercēpī, interceptus, 3, tr., intercept, cut off.**

---

<sup>1</sup> quī . . . discessissent; the subjunctive may be causal, Gr. 627, or due to attraction, Gr. 613.



—Philip Gendreau

A ROMAN CATAPULT

ventis, magnā manū Eburōnēs, Nervii, Aduatucī, atque hōrum omnium socii et clientēs legiōnem oppugnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum cōscendunt. Aegrē is diēs 10 sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritate pōnēbant atque hanc adepti victōriam in perpetuum sē fore<sup>2</sup> victōrēs cōfidēbant.

Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōfestim ā Cicerōne litterae, magnis prōpositis praemiis sī pertulissent.<sup>3</sup> Obsessis omnibus viis, missi 15 intercipiuntur. Noctū ex eā materiā quam mūnitiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs admodum centum vīginti excitantur. Incredi-

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

cliēns, clientis, m., *client, dependent.*

incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptus, 3, tr.; w. infin., *begin, undertake.*

concurrō, concurrere, concurrī, concursus, 3, intr., *run together, rush, gather.*

cōscendō, cōscendere, cōscendī, cōscēsus, 3, tr., *climb, mount, embark.*

sustentō, 1, tr., *hold up, sustain, hold out, endure.*

adipiscor, adipiscī, adeptus sum, 3, tr., *attain to, gain.*

victor, victōris, *victor* (cf. vincō, victōria).

prōpōnō, prōpōnere, prōposuī, prōpositus, 3, tr., *put forward, offer, explain* (cf. proposal, proposition).

obsidēō, obsidēre, obsidī, obsessus, 2, tr., *obstruct, besiege* (cf. obsidiō).

noctū, adv., *by night* (cf. nox, noctūrnus).

māteria, ae, *material, wood.*

comportō, 1, tr., *carry together, collect.*

turris, turris (acc. turrim), *tower* (cf. turret).

admodum, adv., *very, very much*; w. numerals, *as many as.*

centum, indecl. numeral, *one hundred* (cf. centuriō; century).

vīginti, indecl. numeral, *twenty.*

excitō, 1, tr., *arouse, erect.*

incrēdibilis, e, *unbelievable, extraordinary* (in, *not + crēdibilis*; cf. crēdō; credit, etc.).

<sup>2</sup> fore = futūrōs esse; Gr. 360.

<sup>3</sup> sī pertulissent: *if they succeeded in delivering them* (T. Rice Holmes).

bilī celeritāte quae deesse operī vidēbantur perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē, multō<sup>4</sup> mājōribus coāctis cōpiīs, castra oppugnant, 20 fossam complent. Ā nostrīs eādem ratiōne quā<sup>5</sup> prīdiē resistitur.<sup>6</sup> Hoc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis<sup>7</sup> ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātis facultās quiētis datur.

"Everything necessary for repelling the next day's attack was got ready in the night: numerous stakes, burnt and hardened at the ends, and a large number of heavy pikes were prepared; the towers were furnished with platforms, and embattled breastworks of wattle-work were fastened to them. Cicero himself, though he was in very poor health, would not allow himself to rest even in the nighttime; so that the soldiers actually thronged round him and by their remonstrances constrained him to spare himself."<sup>8</sup>

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**opus, operis, n., work, fortifications.**

**perficiō, perficere, perfēci, perfectus, 3, tr., finish, build, achieve (cf. perfect, perfection).**

**prīdiē, adv., on the day before.**

**deinceps, adv., in turn, successively.**

**aeger, aegra, aegrum, ill, sick.**

**vulnerō, 1, tr., wound (cf. vulnus; vulnerable).**

**facultās, facultātis, power, opportunity, resources.**

**quiēs, quiētis, rest, repose (cf. quiet).**

<sup>4</sup> multō; what kind of ablative? See Gr. 771.

<sup>5</sup> eādem ratiōne quā; the verb with quā is understood. See Gr. 608; **ac** could have been used in place of quā.

<sup>6</sup> Ā nostrīs . . . resistitur; Gr. 740-741.

<sup>7</sup> temporis; what kind of genitive? See Gr. 686.

<sup>8</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes, p. 155.



—Courtesy of Meinhold, Dresden

#### THE CHALLENGE OF THE GAUL

"All Gaul is in arms; the Germans are even now crossing the Rhine. Give up your camps and march out of our lands, or . . . !" With these words the Gauls endeavor to terrify Cicero into leaving his winter quarters. Ill though he is, he courageously refuses. Caesar forces the Gauls to lift the siege of Cicero's camp, and then puts them to flight himself despite their overwhelming superiority in manpower.

SCENE II: A space before the camp of Cicero. The leaders in brilliant armor are seen conversing, the Gauls haughtily, the Romans coldly.

Tum ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī 25 sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, eadem quae Ambiorix cum Titūriō ēgerat commemorant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs Rhēnum trānsisse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hiberna

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**aditus**, ūs, *approach, access.*

**potestās, potestātis**, *power, control, opportunity* (cf. **potēns**; *potentate*).

**commemorō**, 1, tr., *remind of, state, mention.*

oppugnārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabinī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant  
 30 fideī faciendae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt sī quidquam ab eīs prae-  
 sidii<sup>9</sup> spērent quī suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in  
 Cicerōnem populūque Rōmānum animō<sup>10</sup> ut nihil nisi hiberna  
 recūsēt atque hanc inveterāscere cōsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre<sup>11</sup>  
 illīs per sē incolumibus ex hibernīs discēdere et quāscumque in  
 35 partēs velint sine metū proficiscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo  
 respondet: nōn esse cōsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab  
 hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē  
 adjūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre sē prō  
 ējus jūstitiā quae petierint<sup>12</sup> impetrātūrōs.

SCENE III: Before the camp of Cicero. The Gauls are seen carry-  
 ing on elaborate siege operations after the best Roman methods.

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

addō, addere, addidī, additus, 3, tr., *place on, add.*

ostentō, 1, tr., *show, exhibit* (cf. ostentation).

errō, 1, tr., *wander, err, am mistaken* (cf. error, erroneous).

diffidō, diffidere, diffisus sum, 3, intr.; w. dat., *distrust, lack confidence* (cf. diffident, diffidence).

animus, ī, *soul, spirit, mind, character, courage* (cf. animation).

nisi, conj., *if not, except, unless.*

recūsō, 1, tr., *refuse, reject, object to.*

inveterāscō, inveterāscere, inveterāvī, inveterātum, 3, intr., *grow old, become established* (cf. *vetus*; inveterate).

cōsuētūdō, cōsuētūdinis, *habit, custom.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōlūi, irreg., tr. and intr.; w. infīn.; acc. w. infīn.; ut (nē), *do not wish, am unwilling*; Gr. 405-407, 419-424.

modo, adv., *only, at least, just now.*

jūstitia, ae, *justice, fair dealing.*

---

<sup>9</sup> quidquam . . . praesidiū; Gr. 686-687.

<sup>10</sup> hōc esse . . . animō; Gr. 762.

<sup>11</sup> See note 58, page 142.

<sup>12</sup> petierint; a shortened form for petiverint, Gr. 1024.

"After this rebuff the Nervii invested the camp with a rampart ten feet high and a trench fifteen feet wide. They had learned the secret from observing our methods in former years; and they also got hints from prisoners whom they had taken, belonging to our army: but, as they had no supply of iron tools suitable for the purpose, they were obliged to cut the sods with their swords, and take up the earth with their hands and in their cloaks. From this one could form an estimate of their vast numbers; for in less than three hours they completed a contravallation three miles in extent; and during the next few days they proceeded, after due preparation, to construct towers proportioned to the height of the Roman rampart, grappling-hooks, and sappers' huts, which the prisoners had also taught them how to make."<sup>13</sup>

SCENE IV: A rampart of the camp. The battle cries of the barbarians are heard on all sides amid the crackle of flames and the crash of timber and stone work.

"On the seventh day of the siege a great gale sprang up; and the besiegers began to sling red-hot bullets made of plastic clay and to throw burning darts at the huts, which, in the Gallic fashion, were thatched. The huts quickly took fire, and, owing to the force of the wind, the flames spread all over the camp. The enemy cheered loudly, as if victory were already certain, and began to move forward their towers and huts and to escalate the rampart."<sup>14</sup>

At tanta militum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum 40

WORD TO REMEMBER

*praesentia*, ae, *presence*.

<sup>13</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes, pp. 156-157.

<sup>14</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes, p. 157.



THE GAULS STORM CICERO'S CAMP

undique flammā torrērentur maximāque tēlorum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnēs fortunās cōnflagrāre intellexerent, nōn modo dē vallō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pugnārent. Hic diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit, sed 45 tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut<sup>15</sup> eō diē maximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut<sup>16</sup> sē sub ipsō vallō cōnstīpāverant recessumque prīmīs ultimī nōn dabant.

"The fire abating a little, a tower was pushed up at one point and brought into contact with the rampart, when the centurions of the 3rd cohort stepped back from the spot where they were standing, withdrew all their men, and began to challenge the enemy, by voice and gesture, to come on if they liked; but not one of them dared to advance. Then they were sent flying by showers of stones from every side; and the tower was set on fire."<sup>17</sup>

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**flamma**, ae, *flame* (cf. inflammatory).

**torreō**, torrēre, torruī, tostum, 2, tr., *scorch, burn*.

**cōnflagrō**, 1, tr., *burn, am on fire* (cf. conflagration).

**nōn modo . . . sed** (etiam), *not only . . . but also*.

**dēcēdō**, dēcēdere, dēcēssī, dēcēssum, 3, intr., *go away from, depart, leave*.

**nē . . . quidem**, *not even*. (Notice that the **nē . . . quidem** encloses the word emphasized.)

**respiciō**, respicere, respexī, respectus, 3, tr., *look back, regard, consider*.

**ēventus**, ūs, *outcome, issue, result* (ē, out + veniō, come).

**cōnstīpō**, 1, tr., *press closely, crowd*.

**recessus**, ūs, *going back, retreat* (cf. recēdō).

**ultimus**, a, um, *farthest, most remote*; as noun: *those in the rear* (cf. ultimate).

<sup>15</sup> Ut introduces a noun clause, Gr. 637, in apposition to hunc . . . ēventum.

<sup>16</sup> ut; translate as with the indicative.

<sup>17</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes, pp. 157-158.

SCENE V: A Gallic slave is seen passing through the crowded camp of the Belgians and the black forests that separate Cicero from the camp of the Roman governor, Caesar.

Quantō<sup>18</sup> erat in diēs<sup>19</sup> gravior atque asperior oppugnātiō et  
 50 maximē quod, magnā parte militum cōfectā vulneribus, rēs ad  
 paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō<sup>18</sup> crēbriōrēs litterae  
 nuntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa  
 in cōspectū nostrōrum militum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat  
 ūnus intus Nervius, nōmine<sup>20</sup> Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā  
 55 primā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem prae-  
 stitit. Hic servō spē libertātis magnisque persuādet praemiis, ut

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**asper, aspera, asperum**, rough, violent.

**paucitās, paucitātis**, small number, fewness (cf. paucī; paucity).

**dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris**, defender (cf. dēfendō).

**crēber, crēbra, crēbrum**, thick, numerous, frequent.

**dēprehendō, dēprehendere, dēprehendī, dēprehēnsus**, 3, tr., seize, capture, catch.

**cruciātus, ūs**, torture.

**necō**, 1, tr., put to death, kill, murder.

**intus**, adv., within.

**Verticō, Verticōnis**, m., Vertico, a Nervian.

**nātus, a, um** (perfect participle of nāscor, am born), born.

**honestus, a, um**, honorable, worthy, distinguished (cf. honest).

**perfugiō, perfugere, perfūgī, perfugitum**, 3, intr., flee (for refuge), take refuge, desert.

**praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitus**, 1, tr., show, supply, excel; as impersonal verb: praestat, praestāre, praestitit, it is better, it is more advisable; Gr. 331-332.

<sup>18</sup> Quantō . . . tantō; Gr. 607.

<sup>19</sup> in diēs: from day to day, every day.

<sup>20</sup> nōmine: by name.

litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille jaculō<sup>21</sup> illigātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ūllā suspīciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculis Cicerōnis legiōnisque cognōscitur.

## ACT III

## THE REVERSAL OF FORTUNES. CAESAR TO THE RESCUE

SCENE I: The camp of Caesar. Messengers are seen riding off posthaste. The relief column passes through the great gate of the winter quarters and hastens through the woods to the accompaniment of sharp commands and the clanging of weapons and cavalry equipment.<sup>1</sup>

Caesar, acceptis litteris hōrā circiter ūndecimā<sup>2</sup> diēi, statim nuntium in Bellovacōs ad Mārcum Crassum, quaestōrem, mittit,

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**jaculum**, ī, *javelin, dart.*

**illigō**, 1, tr., *attach, bind together* (cf. **dēligō**; *ligate*).

**effērō**, *efferre, extulī, ēlātus*, irreg., tr., *bring out, take away, raise, make known, elate.*

**suspīciō**, **suspīciōnis**, *suspicion, distrust, indication.*

**versor**, 1, intr., *move about, am, remain, engage in.*

**ūndecimus**, a, um, *eleventh.*

**Bellovacī**, **Bellovacōrum**, *the Bellovaci* (be löv'á sī).

**Mārcus** (ī) **Crassus** (ī), *Marcus Crassus.*

**quaestor**, **quaestōris**, *quaestor*, a Roman financial officer.

<sup>21</sup> Perhaps the letter was "concealed by lashing twine over it, as if the javelin had been spliced" (T. Rice Holmes).

<sup>1</sup> For the movements here described study the map, page 126.

<sup>2</sup> **hōrā** . . . **ūndecimā**; at about four o'clock in the afternoon

cūjus hiberna aberant ab eō milia passuum quīnque et vīgintī; jubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficisci celeriterque ad sē venīre.  
 5 Exit cum nuntiō Crassus. Alterum ad Gājum Fabium, lēgātum, mittit ut in Atrebātium finēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scribit Labiēnō, sī rei publicae commodō<sup>3</sup> facere possit, cum legiōne ad finēs Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod<sup>4</sup> paulō<sup>5</sup> aberat longius, nōn putat ex-  
 10 spectandam; equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex proximīs hibernīs cōgit.

Hōrā circiter tertiā<sup>6</sup> ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus, eō diē milia passuum vīgintī prōgreditur. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedi-  
 15 menta exercitūs, obsidēs civitātum, litterās pūblicās, frūmentum-que omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat, relinquēbat.

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

quīnque, indecl. numeral, *five*.

Gājus (ī) Fabius (ī), *Gaius Fabius*.

Atrebātēs, Atrebātium, *the Atrebates*.

scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptus, 3, tr.; acc. w. infin., *write*.

commodum, ī, *interest, advantage*.

quadringentī, ae, a, *four hundred*.

antecursor, antecursōris, *forerunner, advance guard* (ante, before + currō, run).

Samarobrīva, ae, *Samarobriva* (sām à ró brí'vā), a town.

attribuō, attribuere, attribui, attribūtus, 3, tr., *assign, allot*.

pūblicus, a, um, *public* (cf. rēs pūblica).

tolerō, 1, tr., *endure, hold out*.

dēvehō, dēvehere, dēvexī, dēvectus, 3, tr., *carry away, bring*.

<sup>3</sup> rei pūblicae commodō: *in accord with the interests of the state*; a common idiomatic expression. Notice that Caesar allows the trusted Labienus freedom of judgment.

<sup>4</sup> quod; not a relative.

<sup>5</sup> paulō; Gr. 771.

<sup>6</sup> hōrā . . . tertiā; about nine o'clock the morning after the message was delivered.

Fabius, ut imperātum erat,<sup>7</sup> nōn ita multum morātus, in itinere cum legiōne occurrit.

“Labienus was aware of the fate of Sabinus and the massacre of his cohorts; the whole host of the Treveri was upon him; and he was afraid that, if he quitted his camp like a runaway, he would not be able to sustain the enemy’s attack, especially as he knew that they were elated by their recent success; accordingly he sent a dispatch to Caesar, telling him that it would be very dangerous for him to withdraw his legion from its quarters, describing what had happened in the country of the Eburones, and explaining that the whole host of the Treveri, horse and foot, had taken up a position three miles from his camp.

“Caesar approved his decision; and although he had only two legions instead of the three which he had expected,<sup>8</sup> he saw that success was just possible with speed.”<sup>9</sup>

Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviōrum finēs. Ibi ex captivīs cognōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in periculō rēs sit. Tum cuidam<sup>10</sup> ex equitibus Gallīs magnīs praemiīs persuādet ut ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat. Hanc Graecīs cōnscriptam litterīs<sup>11</sup> mittit, nē, interceptā epistulā, nostra ab hosti-

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**moror**, 1, tr. and intr., *delay, hinder, linger*.

**captivus**, ī, *prisoner* (cf. *capiō*; captive).

**epistula**, ae, *letter, dispatch*.

**Graecus**, a, um, *Greek*.

**littera**, ae, *letter* (of the alphabet).

---

<sup>7</sup> ut imperātum erat; Gr. 599, 601.

<sup>8</sup> All together Caesar’s relief expedition had about 7,000 men.

<sup>9</sup> *Caesar’s Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes, pp. 160-161.

<sup>10</sup> *cuidam*; Gr. 820.

<sup>11</sup> The letter was written most probably in Latin, but with Greek characters. It is said that English officers during the mutiny in India sometimes wrote dispatches in Greek characters.



CAESAR'S MESSAGE IS DELIVERED TO CICERO'S CAMP

bus cōnsilia cognōsantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam  
 25 cum epistulā ad āmmentum dēligātā intrā mūnitiōnes castrōrum  
 abjiciat. In litterīs scrībit sē cum legiōnibus profectum, celeriter  
 adfore;<sup>12</sup> hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perī-  
 culum veritus, ut erat praeceptum,<sup>13</sup> trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū  
 ad turrim adhaesit neque ā nostrīs bīduō animadversa, tertiō diē  
 30 ā quōdam mīlite cōspicitur, dēmp̄ta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

trāgula, ae, *javelin, dart.*

āmmentum, ī, *strap, thong.* (The ammentum was fastened to the shaft of a javelin in order to throw it with more force.)

dēligō, 1, tr., *bind or tie down, fasten* (cf. *ligate*).

prīstinus, a, um, *former, original, previous.*

praecipio, praecipere, praecēpi, praceptus, 3, tr., *order, bid* (cf. *praceptum*).

adhaereō, adhaerēre, adhaesi, adhaesum, 2, intr.; w. dat. or ad w. acc., *cling to, stick to* (cf. *adhesive*).

bīduum, ī, *a period of two days, two days.*

dēmō, dēmere, dēmp̄si, dēmp̄tus, 3, tr., *take down, remove.*

---

<sup>12</sup> adfore; from adsum, Gr. 360.

<sup>13</sup> See note 7, page 159.

perlēctam in conventū militum recitat maximāque omnēs laetitīā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

SCENE II: With the relief column. Camp is laid out in sight of the enemy.

Gallī, rē cognitā per explorātōrēs, obsidiōnem relinquunt; ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter 35 mīlia sexāgintā. Cicerō, datā facultāte, Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hunc<sup>14</sup> admonet ut iter cautē diligenterque faciat. Perscribit in litterīs hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinē convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte 40 Caesar allātis suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfirmat. Posterō diē lūce primā movet castra et circiter mīlia

WORDS TO REMEMBER

perlegō, perlegere, perlēgī, perlēctus, 3, tr., *read through*.

conventus, ūs, *meeting, assembly* (cf. *conveniō*; convention, convent).

recitō, 1, tr., *read aloud*.

laetitia, ae, *joy*.

afficiō, afficere, affēcī, affectus, 3, tr., *do to, treat, affect*.

fūmus, ī, *smoke* (cf. *fumigate*).

incendium, ī, *fire, conflagration* (cf. *incendō*; incendiary).

dubitātiō, dubitātiōnis, *doubt, hesitation*.

sexāgintā, indecl. numeral, *sixty*.

repetō, repetere, repetivī, repetitus, 3, tr., *seek again, demand back* (*re, back* or *again* + *petō, seek*).

cautē, adv., *cautiously*.

perscribō, perscribere, perscripsī, perscriptus, 3, tr., *write out, describe*.

afferō, affere, attulī, allātus, irreg., tr., *bring to, present, report*.

dīmicō, 1, intr., *fight, struggle*.

<sup>14</sup> It is not clear whether *hunc* refers to *Gallum* or *Caesarem*. What would be the difference in sense?



—Courtesy of *Produzione Consorzio Scipione S. A.*

AN ASSEMBLY IN A ROMAN CAMP

passuum quattuor prōgressus, trāns vallem magnam et rīvum multitudinem hostium cōspicātur. Erat magnī periculī<sup>15</sup> rēs cum tantīs cōpiīs inīquō locō<sup>16</sup> dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne<sup>17</sup> 45 liberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celebritāte existimābat. Cōnsīdit et quam aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium septem, praesertim nūllīs cum impedimentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum<sup>18</sup> quam maximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō ut 50 in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim, speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dīmissīs, explōrat quō commodissimē itinere vallem trānsire possit.

“Cavalry skirmishes took place that day by the water-side, but the two armies maintained their respective positions, the Gauls waiting for reinforcements, which had not yet come up, while Caesar hoped that he might perhaps succeed, by feigning fear, in enticing the enemy over to his position, and thus be able to fight

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

rīvus, ī, *stream, brook* (cf. river).

cōspicor, 1, tr., *observe, perceive*.

quoniam, conj., *because*; Gr. 572-573.

aequus, a, um, *even, level, just*; aequō animō: *with composure*.

cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessum, 3, intr., *settle, take a position, halt, encamp*.

commūniō, 4, tr., *fortify* (cf. mūnitīō, mūniō).

exiguus, a, um, *small*.

septem, indecl. numeral, *seven*.

praesertim, adv., *especially*.

contrahō, contrahere, contrāxī, contractus, 3, tr., *draw together, collect, contract*.

speculātor, speculātōris, *spy, scout*.

---

<sup>15</sup> magnī periculī; modifies rēs, Gr. 695.

<sup>16</sup> See note 39, page 138.

<sup>17</sup> obsidiōne; what kind of ablative? See Gr. 766.

<sup>18</sup> viārum; the 'streets' that crisscrossed a Roman camp.

on the near side of the valley, in front of his camp; or, failing that, might reconnoitre the roads and so cross valley and rivulet with less risk."<sup>19</sup>

Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque  
55 cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōsultō equitēs cēdere  
sēque in castra recipere jubet, simul ex omnibus partibus castra  
altiōre vallō mūnīri portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrandīs  
rēbus quam maximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris  
jubet.

60 Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invītātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciem-  
que iniquō locō cōstituunt, nostrīs verō etiam dē vallō dēductīs,  
propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnitiōnem ex omnibus partibus  
conjiciunt, praecōnibusque circummissīs, prōnuntiārī jubent, seu  
quis<sup>20</sup> Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam<sup>21</sup> ad sē  
65 trānsire, sine periculō licēre,<sup>22</sup> post id tempus nōn fore potestātem.

"The gates were blocked, but merely for show, with a single row of sods; and, fancying that they could not break through that way, some of them, in their contempt for our men, began to

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**simul**, adv., *at once, at the same time* (cf. simultaneous).

**obstruō**, **obstruere**, **obstrūxī**, **obstrūctus**, 3, tr., *block up, obstruct* (cf. obstruction).

**concurso**, 1, tr., *run about*.

**simulātiō**, **simulātiōnis**, *pretense* (cf. simulation).

**invītō**, 1, tr., *invite, summon, allure*.

**praecō**, **praecōnis**, *herald*.

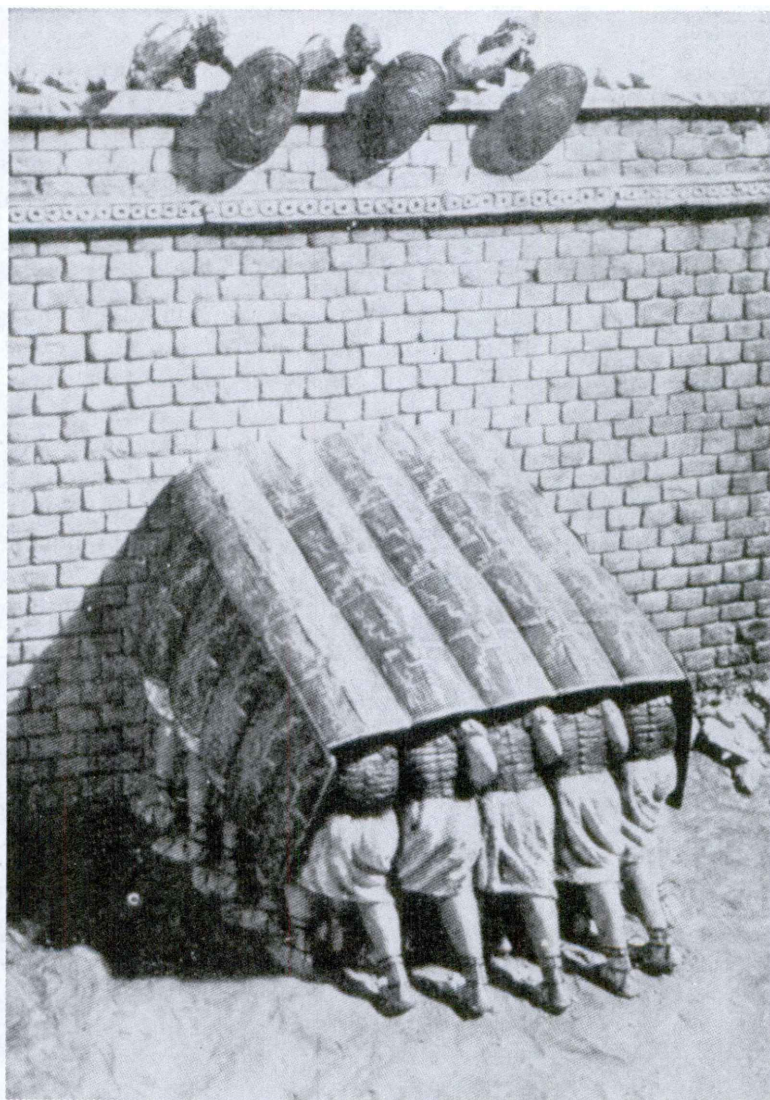
**circummittō**, **circummittere**, **circummīsī**, **circummissus**, 3, tr., *send around*.

<sup>19</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes, pp. 162-163.

<sup>20</sup> **quis**; indefinite pronoun, Gr. 841.

<sup>21</sup> **hōram tertiam**; about nine o'clock in the morning.

<sup>22</sup> See note 58, page 142.



—*Courtesy of Istituto Nazionale Luce*

#### THE TESTUDO

The *testudo* formed by interlocking shields provided security for soldiers while undermining the wall or entering a breach.

demolish the rampart with their bare hands, and others to fill the ditches.”<sup>23</sup>

SCENE III: The same. The Roman trumpets are suddenly heard sounding the charge. We see legionaries pouring from the camp in disciplined order; the enemy in headlong flight; the Romans proceeding across the valley to the camp of Cicero.

Tum Caesar, omnibus portis ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō, celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sīc ut omnīnō pugnandī causā resisteret nēmō, magnumque ex eis numerum occidit atque omnēs armīs exiit.

- 70 Longius prōsequī veritus<sup>24</sup> quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdebant, omnibus suis incolumibus, eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Institūtās turrēs, testūdīnēs mūnitiōnēsque hostium admīratur. Prōductā legiōne, cognōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere; ex hīs omnibus jūdicat rēbus quantō cum  
75 periculō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae. Cicerōnem prō

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

ēruptiō, ēruptiōnis, a *breaking out, sortie, sally* (cf. eruption).

ēmīttō, ēmittere, ēmīsi, ēmissus, 3, tr., *send forth*.

exuō, exuere, exuī, exūtus, 3, tr.; w. abl. of thing stripped off, *strip off, divest, despoil*.

palūs, palūdis, *marsh, swamp*.

intercēdō, intercēdere, intercessī, intercessum, 3, intr., *go between, lie between, intervene*.

testūdō, testūdīnis, *tortoise, shed, testudo*. (When testūdō refers to a military formation it means a column of soldiers holding shields joined overhead.)

admīror, 1, tr., *wonder at, am surprised at, admire* (cf. admiration).

jūdicō, 1, tr.; acc. w. infn., *judge, decide, think*.

<sup>23</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes, p. 163.

<sup>24</sup> prōsequī veritus; Gr. 644.



—Courtesy of Meinhold, Dresden

#### THE RELICS OF THE LOST LEGION

Great leaders have their moments of disappointment and regret as well as moments of success and triumph. Caesar is here shown gazing upon the lost field of Aduatuca and the last remains of Sabinus and his men. Never before or after did Caesar's army in Gaul suffer so terrible a disaster and so terrible a disgrace. Vengeance in accord with pagan ideals, while slow, was none the less relentless in its pursuit of the men who had dared thus to flout the superiority of Caesar and his legions, in whom was epitomized the prestige of Rome.

ējus meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs singillātīm tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimoniō Cicerōnis cognōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cognōscit.

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**meritum**, ī, *desert, merit, service, favor.*

**collaudō**, 1, tr., *praise highly (con + laudō).*

**singillātīm**, adv., *one by one, singly, individually.*

**ēgregius**, a, um, *excellent, superior, remarkable.*

## EPILOGUE

80 Posterō diē, cōntiōne habitā, rem gestam prōpōnit, militēs cōn-  
sōlātur et cōnfirmat; quod<sup>25</sup> dētrimentum culpā et temeritāte  
lēgātī sit acceptum, hoc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod,  
beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incom-  
modō, neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor  
85 relinquātur.

But this disaster was not easily to be forgotten. Caesar, it is said, when he first heard the reports of the annihilation of Sabinus' forces, swore an oath that he would cut neither hair nor beard till he had avenged his lost legion. And this vengeance he took, as occasion offered. The leaders of the rebellion—Catuvolcus, Indutiomarus, Acco—he hounded to their death; the participating tribes he punished with death and slavery and plundering and burning.

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

cōntiō, cōntiōnis, *assembly, mass meeting, address (to a meeting).*  
cōnsōlor, 1, tr., *cheer, comfort (cf. console, consolation, disconsolate).*  
dētrimentum, ī, *harm, injury, loss, disaster (cf. detriment, detrimental).*  
culpa, ae, *blame, guilt, fault.*  
temeritās, temeritātis, *rashness, indiscretion (cf. temere; temerity).*  
beneficiū, ī, *benefit, favor, kindness (bene, well + faciō).*  
immortālis, e, *immortal (cf. morior, mors).*  
expiō, 1, tr., *atone for, expiate, avenge.*  
diūtīnus, a, um, *long, of long duration (cf. diū).*

<sup>25</sup> quod; introduces a noun clause in apposition to the following hoc, Gr. 657-658.

## 9. ALL GAUL IN ARMS

### INTRODUCTION

By diplomacy and arms Caesar had at last brought all Gaul under the power of Rome, and there was now peace throughout the land. But it was not the peace of contented and free men; it was a peace imposed by force and maintained by fear. The legions were quartered at strategic points; their provisions were supplied by the very tribes they held in subjection. Caesar had summoned and presided at national councils; disaffected chieftains like Acco he had formally condemned to death or pursued as outlaws. All this was unbearable tyranny to the proud Gauls. There was an ominous quiet beyond the Alps.

Suddenly, in the early part of 52 B. C., a rumor ran through the villages and fields of Gaul. Rome itself, they heard, was in riot and sedition. Clodius, the hireling of Caesar, had been murdered by political enemies. Caesar would be detained in Italy, and without the leadership of Caesar the legions would be at the mercy of the Gauls. A fever of rebellion swept the country, and once again the flame of liberty burned in Gallic hearts.

It was now clear, however, that only a united effort could cast off the Roman yoke. A great and strong leader was needed. Could Gaul, at this last opportune hour, bring forth a true leader of men? Caesar's account of the beginning of the Great Rebellion of 52 B. C. will supply the answer to this question.

### PART I

#### FIRST PHASE OF THE REBELLION

#### SECRET COUNCILS IN GAUL

Hâc môtī occâsiōne, princîpēs Galliae liberius atque audâcius



THE GAULS TAKE AN OATH OF LOYALTY

dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Convocātis conciliīs silvestribus ac remōtīs locīs,<sup>1</sup> queruntur dē Accōnis morte.<sup>2</sup> Posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant. Queruntur dē commūnī Galliae 5 fortūnā. Omnibus praemiīs poscunt quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis periculō libertātem quam ā mājōribus accēperint recuperent. In primīs ratiōnem habendam esse dīcunt nē Caesar

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**silvestris, e, wooded, in a forest** (cf. *silva*; *sylvan*).

**removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtus, 2, tr., move back, move away, remove, withdraw; remōtus, a, um, remote.**

**queror, querī, questus sum, 3, tr. and intr., complain, bewail, lament** (cf. *querulous*)

**Accō, Accōnis, Acco** (ak'kó), a Gallic chieftain.

**recidō, recidere, recidī, recāsūrus, 3, intr., fall back, fall upon.**

**caput, capitis, head.** (Used of one's life; cf. capital punishment.)

**recuperō, 1, tr., recover.**

**in primīs:** lit., among the first things; hence, especially.

---

<sup>1</sup> In is frequently omitted with *locō* (*locīs*) in expressions of place where.

<sup>2</sup> *Acco*, a Gallic chief convicted of instigating rebellion, had been flogged to death by Caesar's order.

ad exercitum perveniat.<sup>3</sup> Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant, absente imperātōre, ex hibernīs ēgredī, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit. Postrēmō, in aciē 10 praestāre<sup>4</sup> interficī<sup>5</sup> quam nōn prīstinam bellī glōriam libertātemque quam ā mājōribus accēperint recuperāre.

#### THE CARNUTES VOLUNTEER TO LEAD THE REBELLION

Hīs rēbus dictīs, Carnutēs profitentur sē nūllum periculum commūnis salutis causā recūsāre prīncipēsque ex omnibus<sup>6</sup> bellum factūrōs esse pollicentur, et quoniam obsidēs inter sē dare nōn 15 possint nē rēs efferātur, petunt ut jūrejūrandō ac fidē sanciatūr, collātīs militāribus signīs,<sup>7</sup> nē, factō initiō bellī, ab reliquīs dēserantur. Tum, collaudātīs Carnutibus, datō jūrejūrandō ab omnibus quī aderant, tempore ējus rei cōstitutō, ā conciliō discēditur.<sup>8</sup>

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

absēns (*gen. absentis*), *absent*.

praestat, praestāre, praestitit, 1, intr., *it is better, it is advisable*.

jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandī, *oath*.

sancio, sancire, sānxi, sānctus, 4, tr., *make sacred, sanction*.

militāris, e, *military*.

<sup>3</sup> Caesar was in Italy. The Gauls by now were well aware of Caesar's genius as a strategist and a leader of men. Therefore, at all cost, he must be kept from the legions.

<sup>4</sup> praestāre; equivalent to the impersonal praestat of direct discourse, hence there is no subject accusative, Gr. 331 (last example).

<sup>5</sup> interficī; depends on praestāre, Gr. 891.

<sup>6</sup> prīncipēsque ex omnibus: *first of all*.

<sup>7</sup> collātīs militāribus signīs; the military standards were stacked into a sheaf to signify unity—a ceremony of great solemnity among the Gauls.

<sup>8</sup> discēditur; impersonal, Gr. 331-332.

## MASSACRE OF ROMAN CIVILIANS AT CENABUM

10 Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cēnabum<sup>9</sup> signō datō concurrunt cīvēsq̄ue Rōmānōs, quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōstitērant,<sup>10</sup> interficiunt bonaque eōrum capiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae civitātēs fāma perfertur.

(The massacre at Cenabum took place shortly after sunrise. The rumor of it was shouted from field to field and by sundown reached the volcanic lands of the Arvernian mountaineers. There it struck like a trumpet call upon the ears of Vercingetorix, a young patriotic noble.)

## THE MAN OF DESTINY

25 Dē Rōmānōrum caede certior factus, Vercingetorīx,<sup>11</sup> Arvernus, summae potentiae vir, suōs clientēs convocat atque facile incendit. Cognitō ējus cōsiliō, ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne reliquīsque prīncipibus. Expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā.

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

Cēnabum, ī, *Cenabum* (sēn'ā būm), main town of the Carnutes.

negōtior, ī, intr., *carry on business, trade* (cf. negotiation).

Vercingetorīx, Vercingetorīgis, *Vercingetorix* (vēr sīn jēt'ó rix).

Arvernus, ī, *an Arvernian*.

potentia, ae, *power, authority, influence*.

Gobannitiō, Gobannitiōnis, *Gobannitio* (gō bān ish'ī ó), an Arvernian chief, uncle of Vercingetorix.

Gergovia, ae, *Gergovia* (jēr gō'vī à), main stronghold of the Arvernians.

<sup>9</sup> Cēnabum; accusative of place whither. Gr. 917.

<sup>10</sup> Roman merchants had been established in Gaul long before Caesar's coming. Economic penetration had preceded military and political control. A group of Roman merchants and one of Caesar's commissary officers resided at Cenabum. It was a supply depot for Caesar's army.

<sup>11</sup> "A Celt of the Celts, brave, impulsive, chivalrous to a fault, Vercingetorix possessed also, in a fuller measure than any of the patriots who arose before

Nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agrīs habet dilēctum egentium ac  
 30 ̄perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū, quōscumque adit ex civitāte ad  
 suam sententiam perdūcit. Hortātur ut commūnis libertātis causā  
 arma capiant. Magnīs coāctīs cōpiīs, eōs ā quibus paulō ante  
 expulsus erat expellit ex civitāte. Rēx<sup>12</sup> ā suis appellātur. Dī-  
 mittit in omnēs partēs lēgātōs; hortātur ut in fidē<sup>13</sup> permaneant.  
 Celeriter multās civitātēs<sup>14</sup> finitimās omnēsque quī Ōceanō  
 proximī sunt sibi adjungit. 35

#### VERCINGETORIX IS MADE COMMANDER IN CHIEF

Omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā dēlātā po-  
 testāte, omnibus hīs civitātibus obsidēs imperat. Certum numerum  
 mīlitum ad sē celeriter addūcī jubet.

“He fixed a date by which each tribe was to turn out a speci-  
 fied quantity of arms from its own workshops, and devoted special  
 attention to his cavalry. With the utmost diligence he combined  
 the utmost severity in the exercise of his command, coercing  
 waverers by heavy penalties. Thus he punished serious misde-  
 meanours by death at the stake with all kinds of tortures, while  
 he sent home minor offenders with their ears lopped off or one eye

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitūrus, 3, intr., *cease, give up* (cf. desist).

dilēctus, ūs, *levy, choice*.

egēns (*gen. egentis*), *needy, destitute*.

perditus, a, um, *desperate, ruined* (cf. perdition).

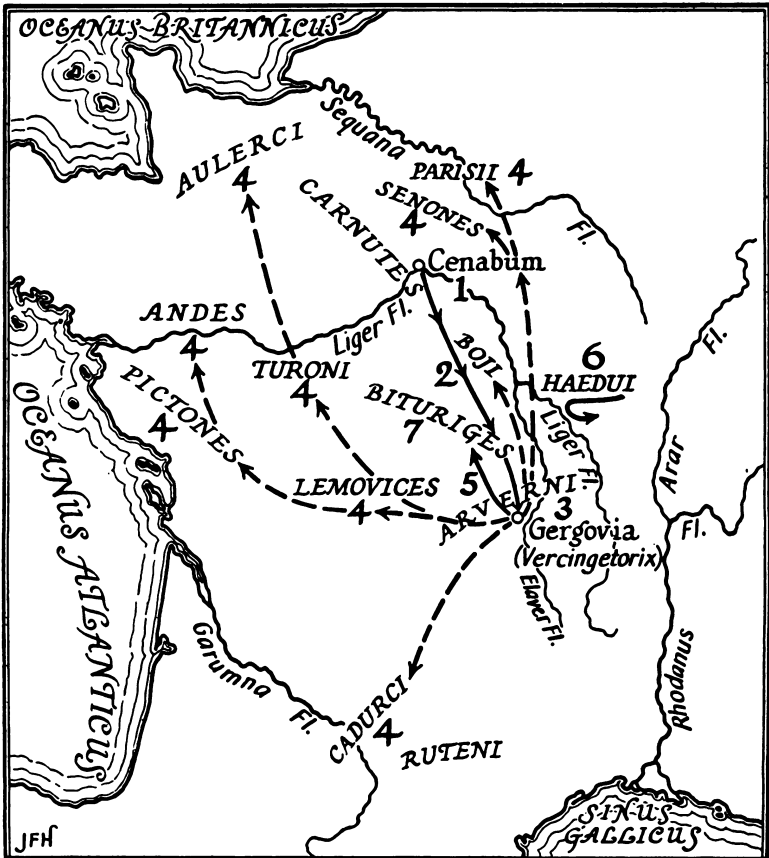
cōnsēnsus, ūs, *consent, agreement*.

him, the gift of personal magnetism.” T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. London, Macmillan, 1903. p. 103.

<sup>12</sup> Rēx; predicate noun, Gr. 747.

<sup>13</sup> in fidē; i. e., the pledge given to the Carnutes in the secret councils.

<sup>14</sup> multās civitātēs; i. e., the Senones, Parisii, Pictones, Cadurci, Turoni, Aulerci, Lemovices, and Andes. See map, page 174.



JFH

### THE SPREAD OF THE REVOLT

1. Massacre of Roman citizens at Cenabum.
2. Report of massacre is carried south to the Arvernians.
3. Vercingetorix seizes power at Gergovia.
4. Vercingetorix wins over numerous tribes by diplomacy.
5. Vercingetorix moves against the Bituriges.
6. The Haedui send troops to aid the Bituriges, but they turn back at the Loire.
7. The Bituriges join the revolt.

gouged out, that they might serve as a warning to the rest and that the severity of their punishment might make others quail."<sup>15</sup>

His suppliciiis celeriter coactō exercitū, Luclerium, Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutēnōs 40 mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficiscitur. Ējus adventū Biturīgēs ad Haeduōs, quōrum erant in fidē,<sup>16</sup> lēgātōs mittunt, quī auxilium rogārent, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Haeduī cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Haeduīs 45 dividit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsire ausī, domum revertuntur, lēgātīsque nostrīs nuntiant sē insidiās veritōs revertisse. Ubi Haeduī discessērunt, Biturīgēs statim sē cum Arvernīs jungunt.

#### CAESAR'S DIFFICULTY

His rēbus in Italiam Caesarī nuntiātīs, in Ulteriōrem Galliam 50 profectus est. Eō<sup>17</sup> cum vēnisset, magnā difficultāte afficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenire posset.<sup>18</sup> Nam, sī legiōnēs in

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**supplicium, ī,** *punishment, death.*

**Luclerius, ī,** *Luclerius* (lūc tē'ri ūs), a chief of the Cadurci.

**Cadūrcus, ī,** *a Cadurcan.*

**audācia, ae,** *daring, boldness, effrontery* (cf. *audāx, audācter*; *audacious, audacity*).

**Rutēnī, Rutēnōrum,** *the Ruteni* (rū tē'nī).

**Biturīgēs, Biturīgum,** *the Bituriges* (bit ū rī'jēz).

**Līger, Ligeris,** *the Loire* (lwār), a river.

<sup>15</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, translated by T. Rice Holmes. London, Macmillan, 1908. p. 208.

<sup>16</sup> *quōrum . . . in fidē: under whose protection, in alliance with whom.*

<sup>17</sup> *Eō*; that is, he arrived in the Roman Province.

<sup>18</sup> *quā . . . posset*; indirect question.

prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente, in itinere proeliō dimicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē eīs quidem quī  
55 eō tempore pācātī vidērentur suam salūtem sine metū permittī  
vidēbat.<sup>19</sup>

### THE REVOLT SPREADS

Interim, Lucterius, Cadūrcus, in Rutēnōs missus, eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs et Gabalōs, ab utrisque obsidēs accipit, et, magnā coāctā manū, in prōvinciam  
60 Narbōnem versus ēruptiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nuntiātā, Caesar Narbōnem<sup>20</sup> proficiscī contendit. Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs cōfirmat; praesidia in Rutēnīs Prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Arecomiīs, Tolōsātibus, circumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, cōstituit; partem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā supplēmen-

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

conciliō, 1, tr., *win over, secure, conciliate.*

Nitiobrogēs, Nitiobrogum, *the Nitiobroges* (nī shōb'ró jēz).

Gabalī, Gabalōrum, *the Gabali* (gāb'á lī).

Narbō, Narbōnis, m., *Narbo*, a city (now Narbonne). See map, page 178.

versus (in . . . versus), prep. w. acc., *towards*. (Usually follows the word to which it is joined, as *wards* in the English *homewards*.)

Rutēnī (ōrum) Prōvinciālēs (ium), *the Provincial Ruteni*; i. e., the part of the tribe within the boundaries of the Roman Province.

Volcae (ārum) Arecomiī (ōrum), *the Volcae Arecomici* (vōl'sē ār é cōm'ī sī), a tribe within the Roman Province.

Tolōsātēs, Tolōsātium, *the Tolosates* (tōl ó sā'tēz), the people of Tolosa (modern Toulouse).

supplēmentum, ī, a *filling up, reinforcements*.

---

<sup>19</sup> Caesar knew that his Gallic allies could not be trusted in times of stress. There was always the danger that the anti-Roman faction would swing them into sudden revolt.

<sup>20</sup> Narbōnem; Gr. 917.



—Courtesy of Metro-Goldwyn-Mayer

#### NAPOLEON THE GREAT

A great leader must be a man of fearless endurance ready to *lead* his men in every effort. Such was Napoleon, shown here at the head of his troops during one of the blizzards that brought about the disastrous retreat from Russia. Such, too, was Caesar, whose courageous dash over the Cevennes Mountains is narrated in the text. Both would seem to have been completely free from fear, especially in a crisis that demanded bold and forthright action.

tumque quod ex Italiā addūxerat, in Helviōs, quī Arvernīs finī- 65  
timī sunt, convenīre jubet. Hīs rēbus comparātīs,<sup>21</sup> repressō  
jam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod cōpiās intrā praesidia dūcere nōn  
audēbat, Caesar in Helviōs proficīscitur.

#### CAESAR STRIKES ACROSS THE MOUNTAINS

Etsī mōns Cebenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs dīvidit, dūris-

---

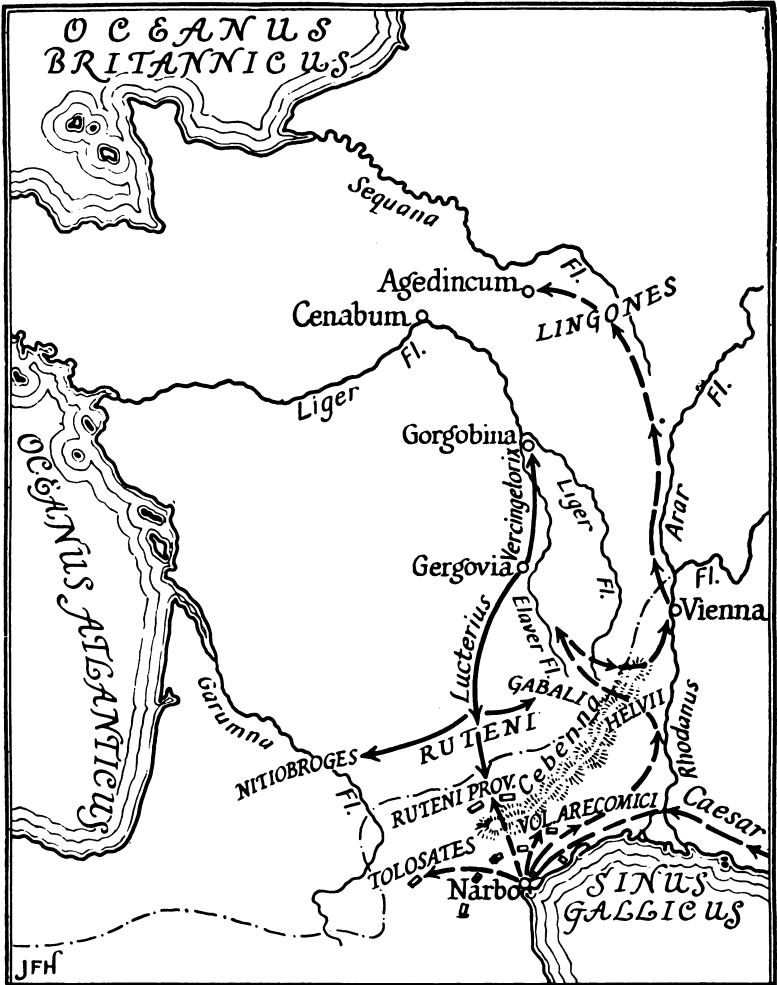
#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

Helviī, Helviōrum, *the Helviī.*

Cebenna, *ae, the Cebenna or the Cevennes (sá včn') Mountains.*

---

<sup>21</sup> Caesar thus prepared a defense-in-depth. Lucterius dared not, by penetrating this defense, expose himself to attacks from all sides.



### LEGEND

- ← - - - Approximate route followed by Caesar
- □ □ Defense garrisons in the Roman Province
- ← Offensive operations of the Gauls

simō tempore annī, altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen, dis- 70  
cussā nive atque ita viīs patefactīs summō mīlitum labōre, ad  
finēs Arvernōrum pervēnit.<sup>22</sup> Quibus subitō oppressis, quod sē  
Cebennā ut<sup>23</sup> mūrō mūnitōs exīstimābant, Caesar equitibus im-  
perat ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam maximum  
hostibus terrōrem īferant. 75

Celeriter haec fāma ac nuntīi ad Vercingetorīgem perferuntur;  
quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut  
suīs fortūnīs cōsulat, neu sē ab hostibus dīripī patiātur, prae-  
sertim cum<sup>24</sup> videat omne ad sē bellum esse trānslātum. Quōrum  
precibus permōtus,<sup>25</sup> castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs 80  
versus.

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**nix, nivis, snow.**

**discutiō, discutere, discussī, discussus, 3, tr., clear away.**

**patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactus, 3, tr., make open, open (pateō, lie open + faciō).**

**vagor, 1, intr., roam about, rove, wander (cf. vagrant).**

**terror, terrōris, alarm, panic, terror.**

**circumsistō, circumsistere, circumsteti, 3, tr., hem in, surround.**

**obsecrō, 1, tr.; ut (nē), implore, entreat, beseech.**

**dīripīō, dīripere, dīripuī, direptus, 3, tr., tear asunder, plunder, pillage.**

**patior, patī, passus sum, 3, tr.; w. infin.; acc. w. infin., endure, allow.**

**trānsferō, trānsferre, trānstulī, trānslātus, irreg., tr., carry over, bring over, transfer.**

**prex, precis, prayer, entreaty.** (Only dat., acc., and abl. used in singular.)

<sup>22</sup> Caesar knew that the Gauls were determined to prevent his reaching the legions at Agedincum. His sudden attack on the Arvernians was calculated to distract them from his immediately subsequent dash to his army over the intervening two hundred miles of country. It also forced Vercingetorix to withdraw his army from the Bituriges.

<sup>23</sup> *ut, as.*

<sup>24</sup> *cum, since; Gr. 578.*

<sup>25</sup> Vercingetorix was constantly hampered by the selfish public opinion of the peoples whom he was trying to lead to unity and common sacrifice.

## CAESAR REACHES THE ARMY

At Caesar, bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, per causam<sup>26</sup> supplē-  
 mentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit; Brūtum hīs  
 cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam  
 85 lātissimē vagentur; datūrum sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs  
 absit. His cōstitūtīs rēbus, quam maximīs potest itineribus  
 Viennam pervēnit. Ibi nactus recentem equitātum, quem multīs  
 ante diēbus<sup>27</sup> eō praemiserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere  
 intermissō, per finēs Haeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae  
 90 legiōnēs hiemābant.<sup>28</sup> Eō cum vēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit  
 omnēsque in ūnum locum cōgit, priusquam dē ējus adventū  
 Arvernīs nuntiārī posset.<sup>29</sup>

## VERCINGETORIX ATTACKS THE BOII

Hāc rē cognitā, Vercingetorix rūrsus in Biturīgēs exercitum

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**operam dare:** *to take pains.*

**Vienna, ae, Vienna** (modern Vienne).

**recēns** (*gen. recentis*), *recent, fresh, new.*

**diurnus, a, um,** *during the day, by day.* (English has no adjective equivalent to **diurnus**; in translating change to an adverbial construction.)

**Lingonēs, Lingonum,** *the Lingones* (lin'gō nēz).

**priusquam, conj., before;** Gr. 564-568.

<sup>26</sup> **per causam:** *on pretext of.* He did not want it even suspected that he was en route to the legions at Agedincum; therefore he gave out that he was going to enlist fresh troops and would, if possible, be back in a few days

<sup>27</sup> **multīs ante diēbus;** Gr. 924; **ante** is here an adverb.

<sup>28</sup> The legions had been thus distributed: two among the Lingones, two on the western frontier of the Treveri, six at Agedincum, the main city of the Senones. He now reaches the legions quartered with the Lingones and assembles the entire army near Agedincum. See map, page 178.

<sup>29</sup> **priusquam . . . posset;** Gr. 567.



—*Pictures, Inc.*

Modern armies with all their mechanization, including that of the air, must still depend upon the infantry, who like Caesar's men must be ready for action in the perilous passes of the Alps, the Jura, or the Pyrenees, for these rocky barriers guard the frontiers of Spain, Italy, and France. The Spanish troops in this picture are carefully picking their way down a treacherous slope as many a Roman detachment must have done in the days of Caesar.

redūcit<sup>30</sup> atque inde profectus, Gorgobinam, Bōjōrum oppidum, oppugnāre instituit.<sup>31</sup> 95

Magnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōsilium capiendum afferēbat. Nam timēbat nē,<sup>32</sup> sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, Gorgobinā expugnātā, omnis Gallia dēficeret;

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**Gorgobina, ae, Gorgobina** (gôr gôb'î nâ), stronghold of the Boii.  
**dēficiō, dēficere, dēfēci, dēfectus**, 3, tr., *fail, desert, fall away, revolt.*

---

<sup>30</sup> Vercingetorix had been forced to lead his army to the defense of the Arvernians against Caesar's thrust over the mountains. Now he could again take the initiative.

<sup>31</sup> The Boii were among Caesar's weakest allies. By attacking them Vercingetorix would force Caesar to come to their defense and so prevent the initiative in offense from falling to the Romans.

<sup>32</sup> **timēbat nē**: *he feared that*; Gr. 642.

sī vērō legiōnēs mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmen-  
100 tāriā labōrāret.<sup>33</sup>

#### CAESAR MARCHES TO THE RELIEF OF GORGOBINA

Praestāre vīsum est<sup>34</sup> tamen omnēs difficultātēs patī quam,  
tantā contumeliā acceptā, omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre.<sup>35</sup>  
Itaque cohortātus Haeduōs dē supportandō commeātū, ad Bōjōs  
praemittit nuntiōs, quī dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque ut in  
105 fidē permaneant atque hostium impetum magnō animō sustineant.  
Duābus Agedincī<sup>36</sup> legiōnibus atque impedimentīs tōtīus exercitūs  
relictīs, ad Bōjōs proficiscitur.

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

mātūrius, comp. adv., *early, too early.*  
ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductus, 3, tr., *lead out.*  
labōrō, 1, intr., *toil, work hard, am in difficulty.*  
aliēnō, 1, tr., *estrangle, alienate.*  
supportō, 1, tr., *convey, supply, furnish.*  
commeātus, ūs, *supplies, provisions.*  
Agedincum, ī, *Agedincum (āg é dīn'kum).*

---

<sup>33</sup> ab rē frūmentāriā labōrāret: *would suffer from lack of grain.*

<sup>34</sup> Praestāre vīsum est: *it seemed better*; passive of *videō* used impersonally.

<sup>35</sup> From the first the Haeduans and the Boii had been Caesar's allies. They supplied him with information, cavalry, and grain, and kept open his line of communications with the Province. It was therefore of vital importance to retain their allegiance; otherwise his armies would be either cut off and destroyed or forced back into the Province.

He did not, however, march directly south to the relief of Gorgobina. He chose to punish immediately those tribes which had precipitated the rebellion. Moreover, an attack on Vercingetorix's allies might force him to lift the siege of Gorgobina and come to their assistance.

Caesar's cavalry had always been greatly strengthened by Gallic contingents. The rebellion deprived him of these additions, but he had hired four hundred German horsemen.

<sup>36</sup> Agedincī; locative, Gr. 915, 30.

Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum<sup>37</sup> Vellaunodūnum vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret oppugnāre instituit, idque bīduō circumvallāvit. Tertiō diē, missīs ex oppidō lēgātīs dē <sup>110</sup> dēditōne, arma cōferrī, jūmenta prōdūcī, sescentōs obsidēs darī jubet. Ea quī cōficeret, Gājum Trebōnium, lēgātum, relinquit; ipse, ut quam primum iter faceret, Cēnabum Carnutum<sup>38</sup> proficiscitur.

Hūc bīduō<sup>39</sup> pervenit. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs, in pos- <sup>115</sup> terum<sup>40</sup> oppugnātiōnem differt, quaeque ad eam rem ūsuī<sup>41</sup> sint mīlitibus imperat et, veritus nē<sup>42</sup> noctū ex oppidō Cēnabēnsēs fugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre jubet.

#### HE CAPTURES CENABUM

Cēnabēnsēs, paulō ante mediam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressī, flūmen trānsire coepērunt. Quā per explōrātōrēs nuntiātā, <sup>120</sup>

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

Senonēs, Senonum, *the Senones* (sēn'ó nēz).

Vellaunodūnum, ī, *Vellaunodunum* (vēl ä nó dū'nūm), a town of the Senones. circumvallō, 1, tr., *surround with a rampart, invest.*

jūmentum, ī, *yoke, beast of burden.*

sescentī, ae, a, *six hundred.*

Gājus (ī) Trebōnius (ī), *Gaius Trebonius.*

posterus, a, um, *after, following, next* (cf. posterity).

Cēnabēnsis, e, *of Cenabum.*

excubō, excubāre, excubūi, excubitum, 1, intr., *lie outside, keep guard.*

silentiō, adv., *silently.*

<sup>37</sup> The Senones had joined the revolt. See note 14, page 173.

<sup>38</sup> The Carnutes had been the principēs ex omnibus in the outbreak of revolt.

<sup>39</sup> bīduō; what kind of ablative? Gr. 922.

<sup>40</sup> in posterum (diem): *to the next day* (cf. in perpetuum).

<sup>41</sup> ūsuī; what kind of dative? Gr. 729.

<sup>42</sup> veritus nē: *fearing lest, fearing that*; Gr. 642.

Caesar legiōnēs quās expeditās esse jusserat, portīs incēnsīs, intrōmittit atque oppidō<sup>43</sup> potitur, omnibus ferē hostibus captīs, quod pontis atque itineris angustiae multitudinis fugam impediverant. Oppidum dirīpit atque incendit. Praedam militibus dat.  
 125 Exercitum Ligerim<sup>44</sup> trādūcit atque in Biturīgum finēs pervenit.

Vercingetorix, ubi dē Caesaris adventū cognōvit, oppugnātiōne<sup>45</sup> dēstitit atque obviam Caesarī proficiscitur. Ille<sup>46</sup> oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā, Noviodūnum, oppugnāre instituit. Quō ex oppidō cum ad eum lēgātī vēnissent dē dēditiōne, ut quam celer-  
 130 rimē rēs cōnficeret, arma cōfferī, equōs prōdūcī, obsidēs dari jubet.

### THE SUDDEN ARRIVAL OF VERCINGETORIX

Parte jam obsidum trādītā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centuriōnibus et paucīs militibus intrōmissis, equitātus hostium procul vīsus est quī agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem  
 135 simul atque oppidānī cōspexērunt, atque in spem auxiliī vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō, arma capere, portās claudere, mūrūm

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**expeditus, a, um,** *unimpeded, free, unobstructed, without baggage, light-armed.*

**intrōmittō, intrōmittere, intrōmīsī, intrōmissus,** 3, tr., *send in.*

**obviam,** adv. or prep. w. dat., *in the way, to meet, towards, against.*

**Noviodūnum, ī,** *Noviodunum* (nō vī ó dū'nūm), the capital of the Suessiones (modern Soissons).

**equus, ī,** *horse.*

**antecēdō, antecēdere, antecessī, antecessus,** 3, tr. and intr., *go before, precede, excel, surpass.*

**oppidānus, a, um,** *pertaining to a town; oppidānus, ī, inhabitant of a town.*

---

<sup>43</sup> oppidō; Gr. 785.

<sup>44</sup> Exercitum Ligerim; double accusative, Gr. 748.

<sup>45</sup> oppugnātiōne; ablative of separation, Gr. 766.

<sup>46</sup> Ille; i. e., Caesar.



THE CAVALRY OF VERCINGETORIX IS SEEN BY THE TOWNSPEOPLE

complere coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido, cum novi<sup>47</sup> aliquid a Gallis iniri consilii<sup>47</sup> intellexissent, gladiis dēstrictis portās occupāverunt suosque omnēs incolumēs recēperunt.

Caesar ex castris equitatum edūcī jubet. Proelium equestre <sup>140</sup> committit. Labōrantibus<sup>48</sup> jam suis Germānos equites<sup>49</sup> circiter quadringentos auxiliō<sup>48</sup> mittit. Eōrum impetum Gallī sustinere nōn potuerunt atque in fugam conjecti, multis amissis, sē ad agmen recēperunt. Quibus pulsīs, rursus oppidāni perterriti comprehensos eōs ā quibus multitudinem ad arma excitātam esse <sup>145</sup> existimābant ad Caesarem perdūxerunt sēsque eī dēdidērunt.

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

dēstringō, dēstringere, dēstrīnxī, dēstrictus, 3, tr., *unbind, unsheathe, draw.*  
equester, equestris, equestre, *of cavalry, cavalry* (adj.).

---

<sup>47</sup> novi, consilii; partitive genitives with aliquid, Gr. 687.

<sup>48</sup> Labōrantibus, auxiliō; double dative, Gr. 731.

<sup>49</sup> A contingent of hired horsemen. Caesar's cavalry also contained Spanish and Gallic auxiliaries.

Quibus rēbus cōfectis, Caesar ad oppidum Avāricum quod erat maximum mūnitissimumque in fīnibus Biturīgum, profectus est, quod, eō oppidō receptō, cīvitatē Biturīgum sē in potestātem  
 150 redāctūrum esse cōfīdēbat.

### THE GAULS CHANGE THEIR STRATEGY

Vercingetorīx, tot incommodis Vellaunodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī<sup>50</sup> acceptis, suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet<sup>51</sup> longē aliā<sup>52</sup> ratiōne bellum gerendum atque<sup>52</sup> antea gestum sit. Omnibus modis huic rēi studendum, ut commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur. Id esse  
 155 facile, quod equitatū ipsī superiōrēs sint et quod annī tempore subleventur; pābulum secārī nōn posse;<sup>53</sup> necessariō dispersōs hostēs ex aedificiīs petere;<sup>54</sup> hōs omnēs cotīdiē ab equitibus concīdī posse. Praetereā, commūnis salūtis causā rēi familiāris

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

Avāricum, ī, *Avaricum* (à vār'īkūm), the stronghold of the Bituriges (now Bourges). See map, page 202.

anteā, adv., *before, formerly, previously* (cf. ante).

modus, ī, *manner, method, kind, measure* (cf. mode).

sublevō, 1, tr., *lift from beneath, support, assist, lighten*.

pābulum, ī, *fodder, provender*.

secō, secāre, secuī, sectus, 1, tr., *cut, reap* (cf. bisect, section).

necessariō, adv., *necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably* (cf. necessarius).

dispersus, a, um, *scattered* (cf. dispersed).

concīdō, concīdere, concīdī, concīsus, 3, tr., *cut down, slay*.

rēs (rēi) familiāris (is), *property*.

---

<sup>50</sup> Vellaunodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī; locatives, Gr. 915, 30.

<sup>51</sup> Indirect discourse depending on docet continues to accidere victis (line 167).

<sup>52</sup> aliā . . . atque: *other . . . than*; Gr. 610.

<sup>53</sup> Caesar had been forced to take the field earlier than usual. There were no fresh crops as yet; his supply problem was therefore critical.

<sup>54</sup> petere; the object is pābulum understood.

commoda esse neglegenda. Vicōs atque aedificia incendiī oportēre  
 quōcumque Rōmānī pābulī causā adīre posse videantur. Hārum 160  
 ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere quod, quōrum in finibus bellum  
 gerātur, eōrum opibus sublevantur. Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn  
 lātūrōs aut magnō cum periculō longius ā castrīs prōgressūrōs.  
 Praetereā, oppida incendiī oportēre quae nōn mūnitiōne et locī  
 nātūrā ab omnī sint periculō tūta. Haec sī gravia videantur, 165  
 multō illa<sup>55</sup> gravius aestimārī dēbere, liberōs, conjugēs in servi-  
 tūtem dēdūcī, ipsōs interficī; quae sit necesse accidere victīs.  
 Omnium cōnsensū hāc sententiā probātā, ūnō diē amplius<sup>56</sup> vīginti  
 urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquīs civitatibus.  
 In omnibus partibus incendia cōspiciuntur. 170

Dēliberātur<sup>57</sup> dē Avāricō in commūnī conciliō, utrum incendiī  
 placēret an<sup>58</sup> dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad pedēs Bi-

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

vīcus, ī, *hamlet, village.*

quōcumque, adv., *wherever.*

suppetō, suppetere, suppetivī, suppetitum, 3, intr., *am at hand, am supplied, hold out.*

opēs, opum, *resources, wealth.*

aestimō, 1, tr., *value, estimate, regard.*

conjūnx, conjugis, *wife.*

dēliberō, 1, tr., *consider, deliberate.*

placet, placēre, placuit, placitum, 2, intr.; w. dat. of person and infin., *it pleases, it seems good, it is decided.*

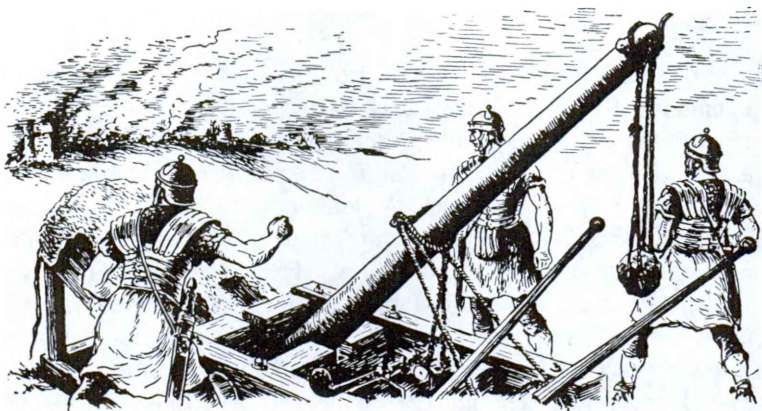
prōcumbō, prōcumbere, prōcubui, prōcubitum, 3, intr., *lean forward, fall down, lie down.*

<sup>55</sup> *illa*; neuter plural, refers to the following liberōs . . . interficī.

<sup>56</sup> *amplius*: *more than*. When *amplius*, *plūs*, *minus* are followed by numerals or words expressing measure, *quam* is omitted without any change in the construction.

<sup>57</sup> *Dēliberātur*; impersonal. Translate: *they deliberated*.

<sup>58</sup> *utrum . . . an*: *whether . . . or*; double indirect question, Gr. 660-662 (last example).



THE CITIES OF THE BITURIGES ARE BURNED

turīgēs, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtīus Galliae urbem, quae et  
 praesidiō et ōrnāmentō sit cīvitātī, suīs manibus incendere cō-  
 175 gerentur. Facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dicunt, quod prope ex  
 omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdata ūnum aditum  
 habeat et angustum. Datur petentibus venia.<sup>59</sup> Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō  
 idōneī dēliguntur.

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum**, *beautiful, noble, glorious* (cf. *pulchritude*).

**prope**, *adv., almost, nearly, recently*.

**ōrnāmentum, ī**, *ornament, mark of honor*.

**circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatus**, 1, *tr., put around, encompass, surround* (*circum, around + dō*).

**venia**, *ae. indulgence, favor, pardon*.

**dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus**, 3, *tr., choose, pick out, select*.

---

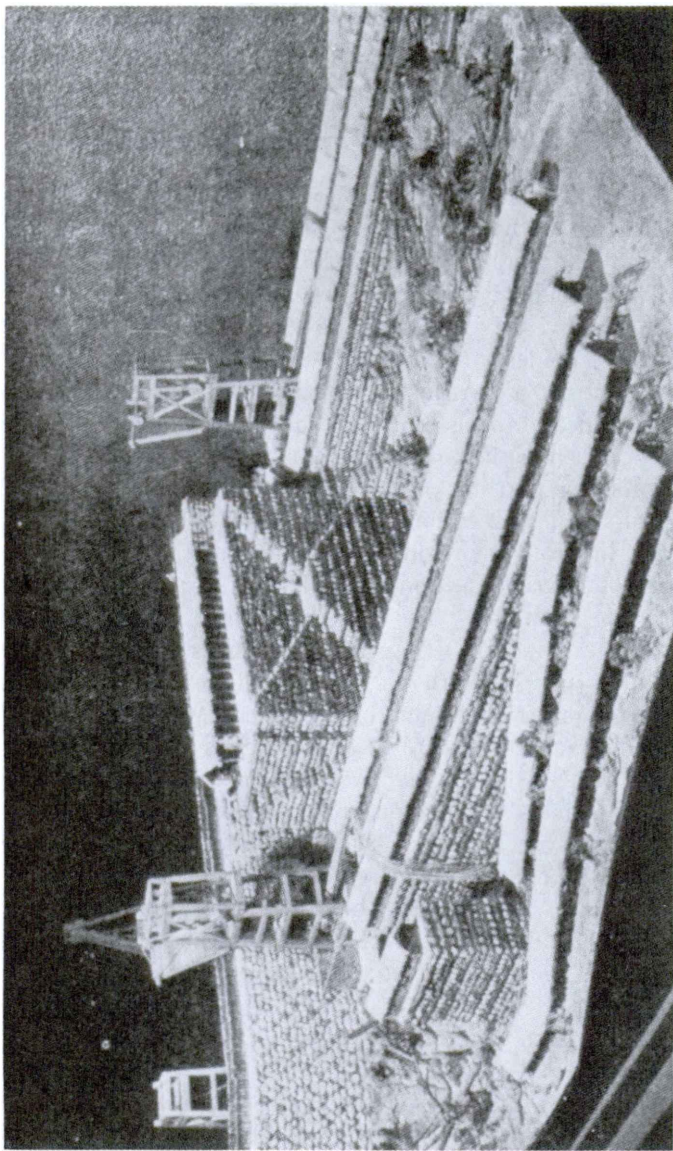
<sup>59</sup> Again the strategy of Vercingetorix is modified because the Gauls are unwilling to make the necessary complete sacrifice. "But Vercingetorix could only govern by character and tact. He had not the powers belonging to the general of an established commonwealth. He might venture to be severe; but he could not afford to lose his popularity. . . . The Bituriges were not restrained by the sense of discipline; and their spokesmen eloquently pleaded their cause. . . . Ver-

“Following Caesar by easy stages, he finally halted about fourteen miles north-east of Avaricum, on a strong position, from which he could communicate with the garrison and harass the besiegers.

“Avaricum was surrounded, on every side except the south, by marshes intersected by sluggish streams. On the south it was approached by a natural causeway, which, about a hundred yards from the wall, suddenly shelved down so as to form a kind of huge moat. Behind this neck of land Caesar pitched his camp. As the marshes rendered it impossible to invest the town, he proceeded to construct a terrace, by which picked troops were ultimately to advance to the assault. The flanking parts were to serve as viaducts, to carry the towers in which artillery were placed; and it is probable that the platform intended for the columns of assault occupied only the front portion of the intervening space. First of all, in order to provide a secure foundation, the ground was cleared of obstructions and levelled as far as possible by men working inside stout huts. The sides of each viaduct were constructed of parallel tiers of logs, the interstices between which were probably packed with earth and rubble. The workmen brought up the material through lines of sheds, which, being contiguous to one another and open at both ends, formed covered galleries; and they were further protected in front by a fence of high wooden shields moving on rollers. Between the walls of timber, which served as lateral supports, they built up the core of the viaduct, which was composed of earth, stones, and timber. The artillerymen who manned the tower kept their catapults playing upon the defenders of the wall. As the structure rose daily higher, the elevation of the tower was correspondingly augmented. When the viaduct was completed, the tower could be moved backwards or forwards along the surface; while the sheds

---

cingetorix strongly opposed their appeal; but they pleaded so pathetically, and their brother chiefs showed such sympathy with them, that he was obliged to give way.” T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*. London, Oxford University Press, 1931. p. 139.



—*Courtesy of Instituto Nazionale Luce*

A model of the siegeworks at Avaricum. Note the long protecting sheds and the attacking towers equipped with battering rams.

were ranged on either side, and served as a means of safe communication. The central mound was probably raised higher than the other two, in order to facilitate the assault; and sheds were placed upon it also, to screen the assailants from observation and attack.

“Meanwhile the new policy of Vercingetorix was beginning to make itself felt. Organized patrols kept him informed of Caesar’s movements, and conveyed his instructions to the garrison. Whenever the Romans went out to forage or procure corn, his horsemen kept them in sight, and handled them severely if they ever ventured to disperse. Caesar did all that ingenuity could suggest to baffle him, sending the men out at odd times and in varying directions; but the enemy seemed ubiquitous. Supplies were running short.”<sup>60</sup>

#### THE ROMANS IN DESPERATE NEED OF SUPPLIES

Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōjōs atque Haeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit. Quōrum alterī,<sup>61</sup> quod nullō studiō<sup>62</sup> agēbant, nōn multum adjuvā- 180  
bant, alterī,<sup>61</sup> nōn magnīs facultātibus, quod civitās erat exigua, celeriter quod habuērunt cōsūmpsērunt. Summā difficultāte reī frūmentāriae affectō exercitū—tenuitāte<sup>63</sup> Bōjōrum, indiligentiā<sup>63</sup> Haeduōrum, incendiis<sup>63</sup> aedificiōrum—ūsque eō<sup>64</sup> ut complūrēs

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**adhortor**, 1, tr., *urge, encourage*.

**tenuitās, tenuitātis**, *thinness, poverty* (cf. *tenuous*).

**indiligentiā, ae, negligētia** (in, *not* + *diligentiā*).

---

<sup>60</sup> T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, pp. 139-141.

<sup>61</sup> *alterī . . . alterī: the latter . . . the former.*

<sup>62</sup> Apparently the general fever of hope and revolt was also affecting the Haeduans.

<sup>63</sup> **tenuitāte, indiligentiā, incendiis**; ablatives of cause, Gr. 781.

<sup>64</sup> **ūsque eō**: lit., *up to there*; i. e., *to such a point*.

185 diēs frūmentō militēs caruerint et in extrēmam famem pervē-  
nerint, nūlla tamen vōx est ab eīs<sup>65</sup> audīta populī Rōmānī mā-  
jestāte et superiōribus victōriis indigna.

“Caesar went among them [his men] as they worked and did all that he could to keep up their spirits. He would abandon the siege, he told them, if they found the pangs of hunger too hard to bear. But they would not hear of such a thing. They reminded him that they had fought under his command for six years with untarnished honour, never abandoning any operation which they had undertaken; and they would cheerfully endure every hardship if only they could avenge the massacre at Cenabum.”<sup>66</sup>

Cum jam mūrō turrēs appropinquāvissent, ex captivīs Caesar cognōvit Vercingetorigem, cōsumptō pābulō, castra mōvisse  
190 propius Avāricum atque ipsum cum equitātū expeditisque in-  
sidiārum causā eō profectum, quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum<sup>67</sup>  
ventūrōs esse arbitrārētur.

#### CAESAR ATTEMPTS A SURPRISE ATTACK ON THE CAMP OF VERGINGETORIX

Quibus rēbus cognitīs, mediā nocte silentiō profectus, ad hosti-  
um castra māne pervēnit. Illī, celeriter per explōrātōrēs adventū  
195 Caesaris cognitō, carrōs impedimenta que sua in dēnsissimās silvās

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

careō, 2, intr.; w. abl., *am without, am free from, miss, want.*

mājestās, mājestātis, *greatness, honor, majesty.*

pābulor, 1, intr., *forage* (cf. pābulum).

māne, adv., *in the morning, early.*

carrus, ī, *cart.*

dēnsus, a, um, *thick, dense.*

---

<sup>65</sup> ab eīs: *from them.* Caesar's pride in his men appears in this report.

<sup>66</sup> T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, p. 141.

<sup>67</sup> pābulātum: *to forage*; supine to express purpose, Gr. 860.

abdidērunt, cōpiās omnēs in locō superiōre atque apertō instrū-  
ērunt.

“The legionaries clamoured for the signal to advance; but Caesar told them that victory could only be purchased by the slaughter of many gallant men, and that their lives were more precious to him than his own reputation. . . .

“Vercingetorix, on returning to the encampment, was accused of treachery. His officers told him to his face that he would never have left them without a leader, exposed to that well-timed attack, if he had not intended to betray them. He ought never to have moved from his original position. It was plain enough that he wanted to reign as Caesar’s creature, not by the choice of his countrymen. Vercingetorix was at no loss for an answer. He had moved, he reminded them, at their own request, simply in order to get forage. They had not been in the slightest danger; for the position in which he had left them was impregnable. He had purposely refrained from delegating his command to any one, for fear they should worry his substitute into risking a battle; for he knew that they had not resolution enough to adhere to a system of warfare which required patient toil. They ought to be thankful that the Romans had tried to attack them, because they could now see for themselves what cowards the Romans were. He had no need to beg Caesar for a kingdom which he could win for himself by the sword; and they might take back their gift if they imagined that they were doing him a favour, and not indebted to him for their safety. ‘And now,’ he said, ‘to satisfy yourselves that what I say is true, listen to Roman soldiers.’ Some camp-followers, whom he had captured a few days before and had kept on starvation diet, were told to step forward. They had been carefully drilled in the part which they were to play. Questioned by Vercingetorix, they stated that they were legionaries, and had secretly left the camp in the hope of finding something to eat; that their comrades, one and all, were half-starved, and too weak to get through their work; and that Caesar had made up his mind, unless within three days he had achieved some tangible results, to abandon the



—*Culver Service*

#### AN ANCIENT SIEGE

The Romans have effected a breach in the wall; a desperate struggle is in progress at that critical point. Note the battering ram with which the breach has been made. A siege tower can be seen in the background.

siege. 'You see,' said Vercingetorix, 'I—I whom you call a traitor—have brought this mighty army, without the loss of a drop of your blood, to the verge of starvation. No course is open to them but an ignominious retreat; and I have arranged that not a single tribe shall give them refuge.' Clashing their weapons, as their custom was, the tribesmen swore that Vercingetorix was the greatest of generals and that they would trust him through thick and thin. They realized how much was staked upon the safety of Avaricum; and ten thousand picked men were sent into the town. But jealousy had much to do with this decision. If the Bituriges succeeded in holding the fortress unaided, the glory of the triumph would be theirs.

"In devising expedients to baffle the operations of the besiegers, the Gauls showed a resourcefulness which astonished Caesar. . . . The wall, compacted with transverse balks and longitudinal beams of timber, was too tough, so to speak, to be breached by the battering ram; and, being also largely composed of stone and rubble, it was proof against fire. The Roman engineers used powerful hooks, riveted to stout poles, to loosen and drag down the stones. These hooks the garrison seized with nooses; and then, by means of windlasses, pulled them up over the wall. They made daily sorties, fired the woodwork of the terrace, and harassed the workers by frequent attacks. They erected towers along the wall, in imitation of those of the besiegers, and filled them with archers and slingers. They drove galleries under the terrace, and dragged away the timber of which it was composed; and, assailing the Roman sappers with sharp stakes, heavy stones, and boiling pitch, they stopped the galleries by which they were approaching to undermine the wall.

"The siege had lasted twenty-five days; and, in spite of numbing cold and drenching rains and harassing opposition, the indefatigable Romans had built up the terrace, three hundred and thirty feet wide and eighty feet high, till it almost reached the wall. To complete the final section of the work was always a difficult and troublesome operation. It was no longer possible to rear a compact and uniform structure, as the enemy, standing

right above on the wall, could pitch heavy stones and other missiles on to the workmen. Huts of extraordinary strength, the sloping roofs of which were protected against fire by bricks, clay, and raw hides, were therefore placed near the edge of the terrace; and, screened by them, the men shot earth, timber, and fascines into the vacant space until the mass reached the necessary height. About midnight, when they were putting the finishing touches to the work, a cloud of smoke was seen rising above it. Some miners had burrowed underneath, and set the woodwork on fire. A yell of exultation rang from the town. Flaming brands shot down from the wall and illumined the figures standing above: pitch and logs were flung on to the fire; and the enemy's masses came streaming through the gates. If the Romans were confused, it was only for a moment. Caesar himself was on the spot; for he had been personally superintending the workmen. Two legions regularly bivouacked in front of the camp, ready for emergencies; and while some cohorts threw themselves upon the enemy, others drew back the towers out of reach of the flames or dragged asunder the woodwork of the terrace to save the hinder part of it from catching fire; others again ran to extinguish the flames. The small hours dragged by; and in the grey dawn the battle was still raging. The mantlets that screened the workmen who moved the towers had been burned; and it was therefore hazardous to wheel the towers to the front. More than once it seemed that the Gauls were winning; and Caesar himself was moved to admiration by their stubborn valour. He saw a man taking lumps of fat and pitch from his comrades, and flinging them into the flames. A bolt from a catapult pierced him; and he fell dead. Another man stepped across his prostrate body, and took his place. He too was struck: but in a moment a third was doing his work, and presently a fourth; nor was the post deserted until the Romans finally extinguished the flames, and the Gauls, beaten at every point, were forced back into the town."<sup>68</sup>

---

<sup>68</sup> T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, pp. 142-145.

Tandem Gallī, quod rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē<sup>69</sup> cōn-  
siliū cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere, hortante et jubente Ver-  
cingetorige. Jamque hoc facere noctū parābant, cum mātres<sup>200</sup>  
familiae subitō prōcurrērunt<sup>70</sup> flentēsq̄e prōjectae ad pedēs  
suōrum omnibus precibus petiērunt, nē sē et commūnēs liberōs  
hostibus ad supplicium dēderent quōs ad capiendam fugam  
nātūrae et vīriūm īfirmitās impediret. Ubi eōs<sup>71</sup> in sententiā  
permanēre vidērunt, quod plērumque in summō periculō timor<sup>205</sup>  
misericiādiā nōn recipit, conclāmāre et significāre dē fugā Rō-  
mānis coepērunt. Quō timōre perterritī Gallī, nē ab equitātū  
Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

### THE ROMANS STORM AVARICUM

Posterō diē Caesar, prōmōtā turrī perfectisque operibus quae  
facere īstituerat, magnō ortō imbre, nōn inūtilem hanc ad cōn-<sup>210</sup>  
siliū capiendum tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius  
custōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**profugiō, profugere, profūgi, profugitum, 3, intr.,** *flee, flee from, run away, escape.*

**mātres (mātrum) familiae (familiārum), matrons.**

**fleō, flēre, flēvi, flētum, 2, intr.,** *weep, shed tears, lament.*

**īfirmitās, īfirmitātis, weakness, fickleness, inconstancy (cf. infirmity).**

**plērumque, adv.,** *generally, very often.*

**significō, 1, tr.,** *make signs, show, indicate, signify.*

**praeoccupō, 1, tr.,** *seize upon beforehand, take possession of.*

**inūtilis, e, useless, worthless, disadvantageous (in, not + ūtilis).**

**incautius, comp. adv.,** *rather incautiously.*

**custōdia, ae, custody, guard.**

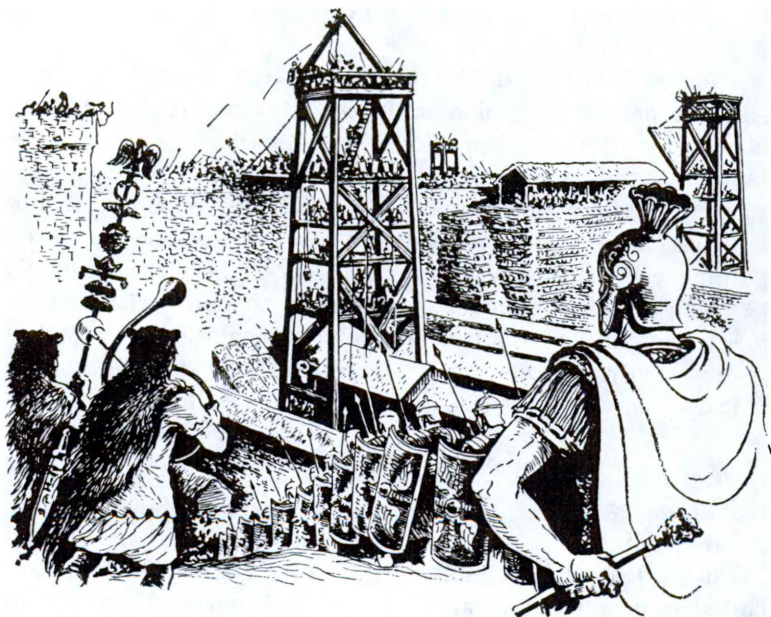
**languidius, comp. adv.,** *rather sluggishly (cf. languid).*

---

<sup>69</sup> posterō diē; this was the twenty-seventh day of the siege.

<sup>70</sup> parābant, cum . . . prōcurrērunt; cum inversum, Gr. 562.

<sup>71</sup> eōs; i. e., the Gallic soldiers.



THE ROMANS STORM AVARICUM

opere versārī jussit et quid fierī vellet ostendit, legiōnibus intrā  
 vineās in occultō expeditīs, cohortātus ut aliquandō prō tantīs  
 215 labōribus frūctum victōriae perciperent, eīs quī primī mūrū  
 ascendissent praemia prōposuit, mīlitibusque signum dedit. Illī  
 subitō ex omnibus partibus advolāvērunt mūrūque celeriter  
 complēvērunt.

Hostēs, rē novā perterritī, mūrō turribusque<sup>72</sup> dējectī, in locīs

WORDS TO REMEMBER

*vīnea*, ae, *vine arbor*, hence a shed for the defense of a besieging party.

*occultum*, ī, *place of concealment, secret*.

*aliquandō*, adv., *at some time, at length, finally*.

*frūctus ūs*, *fruit, profit, reward*.

*percipiō, percipere, percēpī, perceptus*, 3, tr., *obtain, learn of, hear*.

<sup>72</sup> *mūrō turribusque*; ablatives of separation, Gr. 766.

patentibus cuneatim cōstitērunt, hōc animō ut, sī quā ex parte <sup>220</sup> obviam venirētur,<sup>73</sup> aciē instrūctā pugnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī<sup>74</sup> viderunt, veritī nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, prōjectīs armīs ultimās partēs celeriter petivērunt. parsque ibi, cum angustīs portīs sē ipsī premerent, ā militibus, pars, jam ēgressa portīs, ab <sup>225</sup> equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam quī praedae studeret. Sic, et Cēnabēnsī caede et labōre operis incitatī, nōn aetāte cōnfectīs,<sup>75</sup> nōn mulieribus, nōn infantibus pepercērunt.

## PART II

FROM THE FALL OF AVARICUM TO THE DEFECTION OF THE HAEDUI

## VERCINGETORIX ENCOURAGES THE GAULS. HIS POPULARITY

Posterō diē Vercingetorix, conciliō convocātō, cōnsōlātus cohortātusque est, nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent,<sup>1</sup> nē perturbārentur incommodō. Nōn virtūte neque in aciē vīcisse Rōmānōs, sed scientiā oppugnātiōnis, cūjus rei fuerint ipsī imperitī. Errāre,

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**pateō, patēre, patuī, 2, intr.,** *lie open, is open, is passable, stretch out, extend.*

**cuneatim, adv.,** *in wedge-shaped masses.*

**quisquam, quidquam,** *anyone, anything; Gr. 843.*

**mulier, mulieris,** *woman, wife.*

**infāns, infāntis, c.,** *infant.*

**scientia, ae,** *knowledge, science, skill.*

**imperitus, a, um;** *w. gen., unskilled in.*

<sup>73</sup> sī quā . . . venirētur: *if they were approached from any direction.*

<sup>74</sup> circumfundī; impersonal. Translate: *(the Romans) were spread out.*

<sup>75</sup> aetāte cōnfectīs: *those worn out with age.*

<sup>1</sup> nē sē . . . animō dēmitterent: *should not be cast down in spirit.*

5 sī quī<sup>2</sup> in bellō omnēs secundōs rērum ēventūs exspectent. Sibi  
 numquam placuisse Avāricum dēfendī, cūjus rei testēs ipsōs  
 habēret; sed factum imprūdentīā Biturīgum et nimīā obsequentiā  
 reliquōrum ut hoc incommodum acciperētur.<sup>3</sup> Id tamen sē celeriter  
 10 mājōribus commodis refectūrum. Nam quae ab reliquīs Gallīs  
 cīvitatēs dissentirent, hās suā diligentīā adjūctūrum atque  
 ūnum cōsiliūm tōtius Galliae effectūrum, cūjus cōsēnsuī nē  
 orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope jam  
 effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab eis commūnis salutis  
 causā impetrārī ut castra mūnīre instituerent,<sup>4</sup> quō facilius re-  
 15 pentinōs hostium impetūs sustinērent.

Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallīs, et maximē quod ipse animō<sup>5</sup>  
 nōn dēfēcerat, tantō acceptō incommodō, neque sē in occultum  
 abdiderat et cōspectum multitudinis fūgerat; plūsque animō  
 prōvidēre exīstimābātur, quod, rē integrā,<sup>6</sup> primō incendendum  
 20 Avāricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque ut<sup>7</sup> reliquōrum im-

---

 WORDS TO REMEMBER
 

---

numquam, adv., *never*.

testis, testis, m., *witness* (cf. testimony, testify).

imprūdentia, ae, *imprudence, indiscretion*.

nimius, a, um, *beyond measure, too great, excessive*.

obsequentia, ae, *complaisance, compliance*.

orbis (orbis) terrārum, *the world*.

obsistō, obsistere, obstiti, obstitum, 3, intr.; w. dat., *oppose, resist, withstand*.

ingrātus, a, um; w. dat., *unwelcome, displeasing*.

prōvideō, prōvidēre, prōvidī, prōvīsus, 2, tr., *foresee, care for* (cf. providence).

cēnsēō, cēnsēre. cēnsuī, cēnsus, 2, tr.; acc. w. infin., *think, decide*.

---

<sup>2</sup> sī quī: *if any*; indefinite pronoun, Gr. 841.

<sup>3</sup> ut . . . acciperētur; noun clause depending on factum (est), Gr. 637-638.

<sup>4</sup> Vercingetorix realized that the Romans were superior to the Gauls because of their discipline and their knowledge of fortification. He saw that the Gauls must adopt Roman methods.

<sup>5</sup> animō; see animō in note 1, page 199.

<sup>6</sup> rē integrā: *at the outset, before the event*; lit., *the matter being undecided*.

<sup>7</sup> ut . . . sic: *as . . . so*; introducing a comparative clause, Gr. 601.

perātōrum rēs adversae auctōritātem minuunt, sīc hūjus dignitās, incommodō acceptō, in diēs<sup>8</sup> augēbātur.

#### THE GAULS REORGANIZE

Primum eō tempore Gallī castra mūnīre instituērunt<sup>9</sup> et sīc sunt animō<sup>10</sup> perturbātī hominēs īnsuētī labōris, ut omnia quae imperārentur sibi patiēda et perferēda exīstimārent. Nec minus **25** quam est pollicitus Vercingetorix labōrābat, ut reliquās civitātēs adjungeret, atque eārum principēs omnī ratiōne conciliābat. Imperat certum numerum mīlitum civitātibus, sagittāriōsque omnēs, quōrum erat magnus numerus in Galliā, ad sē mittī jubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter id quod Avāricī<sup>11</sup> dēperierat explētur. **30**

#### CAESAR OPENS A NEW CAMPAIGN; HE SENDS LABIENUS INTO THE NORTH AND HIMSELF ADVANCES AGAINST THE MAIN CITY OF THE ARVERNIANS, GERGOVIA

Caesar, Avāricī<sup>11</sup> complūrēs diēs morātus atque summam ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nactus, exercitum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Jam prope hieme cōfectā, cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur, ad hostem proficiscī cōstituit. **35**

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

minuō, minuere, minui, minūtus, 3, tr., *lessen, impair* (cf. *minuta*).

augēō, augēre, auxī, auctus, 2, tr., *increase, augment, enhance*.

īnsuētus, a, um; w. gen., *unaccustomed, not used to*.

sagittārius, ī, *bowman, archer* (cf. *sagitta*).

dēpereō, dēperire, dēperīi, dēperitum, irreg., intr., *go to ruin, perish, am lost, am undone*.

explēō, explēre, explēvī, explētus, 2, tr., *fill out, fill up, finish*.

---

<sup>8</sup> in diēs: *day by day, every day*.

<sup>9</sup> Through the influence of Vercingetorix; see note 4, page 200.

<sup>10</sup> animō; see animō in note 1, page 199.

<sup>11</sup> Avāricī; locative, Gr. 30.



“Suddenly his attention was distracted by serious news from the Aedui. Two chiefs, Cotus and Convictolitavis, were contending for the first magistracy, each insisting that he had been legally elected: their retainers were up in arms; and a civil war was imminent. A deputation of leading men begged Caesar to arbitrate. He saw that it was of vital importance to prevent the weaker side from appealing for aid to Vercingetorix. Accordingly, though he was most reluctant to delay his operations, he summoned the rivals and the council to meet him at Decetia, or Décize, on the Loire. This town was in Aeduan territory, and nearly sixty miles from Avaricum: but it was illegal for the Vergobret to cross the frontier; and Caesar was too wise to offer a needless slight to native custom. He was informed that Cotus had been nominated by his brother, the late Vergobret, in defiance of an Aeduan law which prescribed that no man should hold office or even sit in the senate while any member of his family who had done so survived. He accordingly settled the dispute in favour of Convictolitavis, who, as was the custom when the magistracy remained vacant, had been appointed by the Druids. Before dismissing the council, he urged them to forget their differences, and told them that, if they wanted to share in the spoils of victory, they must honestly help to put down the rebellion. He should require ten thousand foot to guard his convoys, and all their cavalry.”<sup>12</sup>

Exercitum in duās partēs dīvisit. Quattuor legiōnēs in Senonēs Parīsiōsque Labiēnō dūcendās dedit; sex ipse in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flūmen Elaver dūxit. Equitātūs partem illī attribuit, partem sibi reliquit.

---

WORD TO REMEMBER

**Elaver, Elaveris, n.,** *the Elaver*, a river (now the Allier).

---

<sup>12</sup> T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, pp. 147-148.

VERCINGETORIX ATTEMPTS TO KEEP CAESAR ON THE  
EAST BANK OF THE ALLIER

40 Quā rē cognitā, Vercingetorix, omnibus interruptis ejus flū-  
minis pontibus, ab alterā flūminis parte iter facere coepit.<sup>13</sup> Cum  
uterque utriusque esset exercitus in cōspectū, ferē ē regiōne cas-  
trōrum Caesaris Vercingetorix castra pōnēbat, dispositis explō-  
rātōribus nēcubi effectō ponte Rōmāni cōpiās trādūcerent.

CAESAR DUPES VERCINGETORIX

45 Erat in magnis Caesarī difficultatibus rēs, nē mājorem aestātis  
partem flūmine impedirētur, quod nōn ferē ante autumnum Elaver  
vadō trānsiri sōlet. Itaque, nē id accideret, silvestri locō castris  
positis, ē regiōne ūnius eōrum pontium quōs Vercingetorix  
rescindendōs cūrāverat,<sup>14</sup> posterō diē cum duābus legiōnibus in  
50 occultō mānsit; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus impedimentis, ut<sup>15</sup>  
cōnsuērat,<sup>16</sup> misit, dīmidiātis quibusdam cohortibus, ut numerus

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**interrumpō, interrumpere, interrūpī, interruptus**, 3, tr., *break off, break through, destroy* (cf. interruption).

**ē regiōne**; w. gen., *opposite*.

**nēcubi**, adv., *that nowhere, lest anywhere*.

**autumnus, ī**, *autumn*.

**soleō, solēre, solitus sum**, 2, intr., *am wont, am accustomed*.

**rescindō, rescindere, rescidī, rescissus**, 3, tr., *cut away, cut down, break down, destroy*.

**cūrō**, 1, tr.; ut (nē), *care for, take care of, provide for*.

**dīmidiō**, 1, tr., *divide in half*.

<sup>13</sup> Caesar was on the east bank of the river. He had to cross over to attack Gergovia, the main city of the Arverni. Hence the strategy of Vercingetorix.

<sup>14</sup> quōs Vercingetorix rescindendōs cūrāverat: *which Vercingetorix had taken care to destroy*; Gr. 883.

<sup>15</sup> ut, *as*.

<sup>16</sup> cōnsuērat; shortened form for cōnsuēverat, Gr. 1023.

legiōnum cōnstāre vidērētur. His quam longissimē possent prō-gredi jussis, cum jam ex diēi tempore conjectūram caperet in castra perventum,<sup>17</sup> Caesar eisdem publicis, quārum pars inferior integra erat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legiōni- 55 busque trāductis et locō castris idōneō dēlectō, reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Vercingetorix, rē cognitā, nē contrā suam voluntātem dīmīcāre cogerētur, magnis itineribus antecessit.<sup>18</sup>

#### THE SITUATION AT GERGOVIA

Caesar ex eō locō quīntis castris<sup>19</sup> Gergoviam pervēnit, equestrī- que eō diē proeliō levī factō, perspectō urbis sitū, quae posita in 60 altissimō monte omnēs aditūs difficilēs habēbat, dē oppugnātiōne dēspērāvit; dē obsidiōne nōn prius agendum cōstituit quam rem frūmentāriam expedisset.<sup>20</sup> At Vercingetorix, castris prope oppi- dum in monte positis, mediocribus circum sē intervallis sēparātīm

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**cōnstō, cōnstāre, cōstitī, cōnstātum, 1, intr., stand firm, depend on, am complete, cost.**

**conjectūra, ae, inference, conjecture.**

**publica, ae, pile, stake.**

**inferior, inferius, lower.**

**voluntās, voluntātis, f., will, desire, good will, consent (cf. voluntary).**

**quīntus, a, um, fifth.**

**situs, ūs, m., situation, site.**

**expediō, 4, tr., set free, arrange, prepare.**

**mediocris, e, ordinary, moderate (cf. mediocrity).**

**intervallum, i, interval, distance.**

**sēparātīm, adv., separately.**

---

<sup>17</sup> **perventum; i. e., perventuum esse ā legiōnibus; impersonal passive, Gr. 331-332.**

<sup>18</sup> **antecessit; i. e., towards Gergovia.**

<sup>19</sup> **quīntis castris: in five marches. A camp was constructed at the end of each day's march.**

<sup>20</sup> **expedisset; shortened form for expedivisset.**

65 *singulārum cīvitātum cōpiās collocāvit atque, omnibus ējus jugī collibus occupātis, horribilem speciem praebēbat, principēsque eārum cīvitātum quōs sibi ad cōsilium capiendum dēlēgerat, primā lūce cotidiē ad sē convenīre jubēbat, seu quid<sup>21</sup> commūnicandum, seu quid<sup>21</sup> administrandum vidērētur; neque ūllum ferē*  
 70 *diem intermittēbat, quīn equestrī proeliō interjectis sagittāriis, quid in quōque esset animī ac virtūtis<sup>22</sup> suōrum<sup>23</sup> periclitārētur.*

### A STRATEGIC HILL

Erat ē regiōne oppidī collis sub ipsīs rādīcibus montis ēgregiē mūnītus atque ex omnī parte circumcīsus, quem sī tenērent nostrī, et aquae magnā parte et pābulātiōne<sup>24</sup> liberā prohibitūrī<sup>25</sup>  
 75 *hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō ab hīs nōn nimis firmō*

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**singulāris, e**, *one by one, single, extraordinary.*

**horribilis, e**, *dreadful, horrible, frightful, hideous.*

**praebeō**, 2, tr., *hold out, offer, furnish.*

**quīn**, conj., *that not, but that*; Gr. 650-656.

**periclitator**, 1, tr. and intr., *try, test, am in danger.*

**rādix, rādīcis**, f., *root.*

**ēgregiē**, adv., *excellently, admirably, remarkably.*

**circumcīdō, circumcīdere, circumcīdī, circumcīsus**, 3, tr., *cut around, cut off, isolate.*

**aqua**, ae, *water.*

**pābulātiō, pābulātiōnis**, *getting fodder, foraging.*

**nimis**, adv., *too much.*

<sup>21</sup> **quid** . . . **quid**: *anything*; indefinite pronoun, Gr. 841.

<sup>22</sup> **animī ac virtūtis**; partitive genitives depending on the interrogative **quid**, Gr. 687.

<sup>23</sup> **suōrum**; depends on **quōque** (from **quisque**).

<sup>24</sup> **parte et pābulātiōne**; ablatives of separation, Gr. 766.

<sup>25</sup> **prohibitūrī**; understand **esse**; nominative because it must agree with the subject of **vidēbantur**, Gr. 894, 902 (last two examples).



WITH THE ROMANS AT GERGOVIA

A Roman officer here addresses a legionary soldier who has been detailed to work on the fortifications. Every Roman soldier was an 'engineer' as well as a fighting man, the spade being as familiar to him as the sword.

tenēbātur. Tamen silentiō noctis Caesar ex castris ēgressus, priusquam<sup>26</sup> subsidiō ex oppidō venīri posset,<sup>27</sup> dējectō praesidiō, potītus locō, duās ibi legiōnēs collocāvit fossamque duplicem

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**silentium**, ī, *silence, stillness.*

**duplex** (*gen. duplicis*), *twofold, double* (cf. duplicity).

---

<sup>26</sup> priusquam; Gr. 567.

<sup>27</sup> venīri posset; impersonal.

duodēnum pedum ā mājōribus castrīs ad minōra<sup>28</sup> perdūxit, ut  
80 tūtō ab repentinō hostium incursū etiam singulī trānsire possent.

#### THE LEADERS OF THE HAEDUI CONSPIRE AGAINST CAESAR

Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitāvis, Haeduus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā, cum quibusdam adulēscētibz colloquitur; quōrum erat princeps Litaviccus atque ējus frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscētēs. Cum hīs praemium com-  
85 mūnicat hortāturque ut sē liberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint. Ūnam<sup>29</sup> esse Haeduōrum cīvitātem, quae certissimam Galliae vic-  
tōriam distineat; ējus auctōritāte reliquās continēri; quā cīvitāte trāductā, locum cōsistendi Rōmānis in Galliā nōn fore. Esse nōnnūllō sē Caesaris beneficiō affectum, sīc tamen ut jūstissimam

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

duodēni, ae, a, *twelve each*. duodēnum; shortened form for duodēnōrum.

tūtō, adv., *safely, securely*.

incursus, ūs, *attack*.

Convictolitāvis, Convictolitāvis, *Convictolitavis* (cōn vik tō lit'ā vīs), an Haeduan chief.

sollicitō, 1, tr., *stir up, instigate*.

pecūnia, ae, *property, wealth, money* (cf. pecuniary).

adulēscēns, adulēscētis, *youth, young man*.

Litaviccus, ī, *Litaviccus* (lit ā vik'ūs), an Haeduan nobleman.

familia, ae, *household* (including slaves), *retinue* (including all dependents), *family*.

meminī, meminisse, *remember, bear in mind*; Gr. 436-442.

distineō, distinēre, distinuī, distentus, 2, tr., *hold apart, divide, isolate*.

jūstus, a, um, *lawful, just, fair, proper, regular*.

<sup>28</sup> minōra (castra); the new camp on the hill just captured. The mājōra castra is the first Roman camp.

<sup>29</sup> Indirect discourse, depending on the idea of *saying* in hortātur, continues down to ad Haeduōs veniant (line 92).

apud eum causam obtinuerit, sed sē plūs commūnī libertātī tri-<sup>90</sup>  
 buere. Cūr enim potius Haeduī dē suō jūre et dē lēgibus ad  
 Caesarem disceptātōrem<sup>30</sup> quam Rōmānī ad Haeduōs veniant?  
 Celeriter adulēscentibus et ōrātiōne magistrātūs et praemiō de-  
 dūctīs, cum sē prīncipēs ējus cōnsiliū fore profitērentur, ratiō  
 perficiendī quaerēbātur, quod cīvitātem temere ad suscipiendum <sup>95</sup>  
 bellum addūcī posse nōn cōnfidēbant. Placuit ut Litaviccus decem  
 illīs milibus quae Caesarī ad bellum mitterentur praeficerētur,  
 atque ea dūcenda cūraret, frātrēsque ējus ad Caesarem prae-  
 currerent. Reliqua quā ratiōne agī placeat, cōstituunt.

#### THE TROOPS OF THE HAEDUI ARE TRICKED INTO REVOLT

Litaviccus, acceptō exercitū, cum mīlia passuum circiter trī-<sup>100</sup>  
 gīntā ā Gergoviā abesset, convocātīs subitō militibus, lacrimāns:  
 "Quō proficiscimur," inquit, "militēs? Omnis noster equitātus,  
 omnis nōbilitās interiit; prīncipēs cīvitātis, Eporēdorix et Viri-

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus**, 3, tr., *assign, grant, render* (cf. tribute).

**potius**, adv., *rather*.

**jūs, jūris**, *right, justice, law* (cf. jurist).

**disceptātor, disceptātōris**, *judge, umpire*.

**magistrātus, ūs**, *magistracy, magistrate*.

**praecurrō, praecurrere, praecurrī, praecursum**, 3, intr., *run before, precede, surpass*.

**trīgīntā**, indecl. numeral, *thirty*.

**lacrimō**, 1, intr., *weep, cry*.

**nōbilitās, nōbilitātis**, *celebrity, noble birth, nobility, the nobility*.

**Eporēdorix, Eporēdorīgis**, *Eporedorix* (ep ō rēd'ō rix), the name of two Haeduan leaders.

**Viridomārus, ī**, *Viridomarus* (vīr ī dô mā'rūs), a chief of the Haedui.

<sup>30</sup> As they had done in the controversy over the magistracy.

domārus, insimulātī prōditiōnis,<sup>31</sup> ab Rōmānīs, indictā causā, in-  
 105 terfectī sunt. Haec ab hīs cognōscite quī ex ipsā caede effūgērunt ;  
 nam ego, frātribus atque omnibus meis propinquīs interfectīs,  
 dolōre prohibeor quae gesta sunt prōnuntiāre.” Prōdūcuntur eī,  
 quōs ille docuerat quae dīcī vellet, atque eadem quae Litaviccus  
 prōnuntiāverat multitudinī expōnunt; omnēs equitēs Haedu-  
 110 ōrum interfectōs, quod collocūtī cum Arvernīs dīcerentur; ipsōs  
 sē inter multitudinem mīlitum occultāvisse atque ex mediā caede  
 effūgisse.

Conclāmant Haeduī et Litaviccum obsecrant ut sibi cōnsulat.  
 “Quasi vērō,” inquit ille, “cōnsiliū sit<sup>32</sup> rēs<sup>33</sup> ac nōn necesse sit  
 115 nōbīs Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet<sup>34</sup> conjungere.  
 An dubitāmus quīn,<sup>35</sup> nefāriō facinore admissō, Rōmānī jam ad  
 nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in nōbīs animī est,  
 persequāmur eōrum mortem, quī indignissimē interiērunt, atque

WORDS TO REMEMBER

insimulō, 1, tr.; w. gen. of the charge, *charge, blame, accuse.*

prōditiō, prōditiōnis, *betrayal, treason.*

indictus, a, um, *unsaid, unheard.*

effugiō, effugere, effūgī, 3, tr. and intr., *flee from, escape.*

expōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositus, 3, tr., *explain, disembark* (cf. exposition).

occultō, 1, tr., *hide, keep secret, conceal.*

quasi, conj., *as if, just as if.*

an, conj., *or, or rather*; Gr. 508.

dubitō, 1, intr., *doubt, hesitate.*

nefārius, a, um, *wicked, impious* (cf. nefarious).

facinus, facinoris, n., *deed, misdeed, outrage, crime.*

admittō,mittere, admīsi, admissus, 3, tr., *admit, commit, incur.*

persequor, persequī, persecūtus sum, 3, tr., *pursue, follow up, avenge.*

<sup>31</sup> prōditiōnis; genitive of the charge, Gr. 717.

<sup>32</sup> Quasi . . . sit; Gr. 611.

<sup>33</sup> cōnsiliū . . . rēs: a matter for (of) consideration.

<sup>34</sup> nōsmet; emphatic form of nōs (nōs + emphasizing suffix met).

<sup>35</sup> An dubitāmus quīn: Or to we doubt that; Gr. 651.

hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus." Ostendit<sup>36</sup> civēs Rōmānōs, quī ējus praesidii fīdūciā ūnā erant. Continuō magnum numerum frūmentī <sup>120</sup> commeātūsque dīripit; ipsōs cum cruciātū necat. Nuntiōs tōtā cīvitate<sup>37</sup> Haeduōrum dīmittit; eōdem mendāciō dē caede equitum et principum permovet; hortātur ut, simili ratiōne atque<sup>38</sup> ipse fēcerit, suās injūriās persequantur.

Eporēdorix, Haeduuus, summō locō nātus<sup>39</sup> adulēscēns et sum- <sup>125</sup> mae domī<sup>40</sup> potentiae, et ūnā Viridomārus, parī aetāte et grātiā sed genere disparī,<sup>41</sup> in equitum numerō convēnerant, nōminātim ab Caesare convocāti. Hīs erat inter sē dē principātū contentiō et in illā magistrātuum contrōversiā<sup>42</sup> alter<sup>43</sup> prō Convictolitāve, alter<sup>43</sup> prō Cotō summīs opibus pugnāverant. <sup>130</sup>

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

- latrō, latrōnis, *bandit, robber.*  
 fīdūcia, ae, *confidence, trust, reliance.*  
 continuō, adv., *immediately, forthwith.*  
 mendācium, ī, *lie, falsehood.*  
 domus, ūs, f., *house, home.*  
 pār (*gen. paris*), *equal, like.*  
 dispār (*gen. disparis*), *unequal, ill-matched.*  
 nōminātim, adv., *by name, expressly.*  
 principātus, ūs, *chief position, leadership.*  
 contentiō, contentiōnis, *struggle, contest.*  
 Cotus, ī, *Cotus (kō'tūs), an Haeduan noble.*

<sup>36</sup> Litaviccus, of course, knew what would happen when he handed over these Romans to the angry Haedui. He hoped that this massacre would make a reconciliation with Caesar impossible.

<sup>37</sup> tōtā cīvitate: *throughout the whole state.*

<sup>38</sup> simili ratiōne atque: *in like manner as*; Gr. 610.

<sup>39</sup> summō locō nātus: *of noble birth*; lit., *born of high place*; Gr. 768.

<sup>40</sup> domī: *at home*; i. e., *in his own country*. Domī is a locative, Gr. 915, 30.

<sup>41</sup> parī aetāte et grātiā sed genere disparī; *ablative of description*, Gr. 762.

<sup>42</sup> illā . . . contrōversiā; *see page 203.*

<sup>43</sup> alter . . . alter: *the former . . . the latter.*

## CAESAR LEARNS OF THE CONSPIRACY

Ex his Eporēdorix, cognitō Litaviccī cōnsiliō, mediā ferē nocte rem ad Caesarem dēfert. Ōrat nē patiātur civitātem prāvis adulēsentium cōnsiliis ab amicitia populī Rōmānī dēficere, quod prōvideat, sī sē tot hominum mīlia cum hostibus conjūxerint, 135 quōrum salūtem neque propinquī neglegere, neque civitās levī mōmentō<sup>44</sup> aestimāre possit.

Magnā affectus sollicitūdine hōc nuntiō, Caesar, quod semper Haeduōrum civitātī praecipuē indulserat, nullā interpositā dubitātiōne, legiōnēs expeditās quattuor equitātumque omnem ex 140 castris ēdūcit; nec fuit spatium tāli tempore ad contrahenda castra,<sup>45</sup> quod rēs posita in celeritate vidēbātur. Gājum Fabium, lēgātum, cum legiōnibus duābus castris praesidiō relinquit. Frātrēs Litaviccī, cum comprehendī jussisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostēs prōfūgisse. Adhortātus militēs, nē necessariō tempore 145 itineris labōre permoveantur, cupidissimīs omnibus, prōgressus mīlia passuum vīginti quinque, agmen Haeduōrum cōnspicātur; immisō equitātū, iter eōrum morātur atque impedit; interdicīque omnibus, nē quemquam interficiant.<sup>46</sup>

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

prāvus, a, um, *perverse, wrong.*

sollicitūdō, sollicitūdinis, *anxiety, worry, apprehension.*

praecipuē, adv., *especially, particularly.*

indulgeō, indulgēre, indulsi, 2, intr.; w. dat., *am indulgent to, favor.*

necessarius, a, um, *necessary, requisite, pressing.*

immittō, immittere, immisi, immissus, 3, tr., *send into, let into, send against.*

interdicō, interdīcere, interdixi, interdictum, 3, intr.; w. dat. of person; *nē, prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict.*

<sup>44</sup> levī mōmentō: *of no moment*; ablative of price, Gr. 788.

<sup>45</sup> The camp had been constructed for six legions; its defenses had now to be manned by two.

<sup>46</sup> Just as Litaviccus had thought that the murder of Roman citizens, which he had deliberately instigated (page 211), would irrevocably commit the Hae-

## THE HAEDUI DISCOVER THEIR ERROR

Eporēdorigem et Viridomārum, quōs illī interfectōs exīstimābant, inter equitēs versārī suōsque appellāre jubet. His cognitīs 150 et Litaviccī fraude perspectā, Haeduī manūs tendere et dēditionem significāre et, prōjectīs armīs, mortem dēprecārī incipiunt.

Litaviccus cum suīs clientibus<sup>47</sup> Gergoviam perfugit. Caesar, nuntiīs ad civitātem Haeduōrum missis, quī suō beneficiō cōn-servātōs docērent, quōs jūre bellī interficere potuisset, tribusque 155 hōrīs exercituī ad quiētem datīs, castra ad Gergoviam movet.

## MEANWHILE THE CAMP AT GERGOVIA IS ASSAULTED

Mediō ferē itinere equitēs ā Fabiō missī quantō rēs in periculō fuerit expōnunt. Summīs cōpiīs castra oppugnāta dēmōnstrant, cum crēbrō integrī dēfessīs succēderent nostrōsque assiduō labōre dēfatīgārent, quibus propter magnitudinem castrōrum perpetuō 160 esset eīdem<sup>48</sup> in vallō permanendum. Multitudine sagittārum atque omnis generis tēlorum multōs vulnerātōs; ad haec susti-

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**fraus, fraudis**, *cheating, deception* (cf. fraudulent).

**tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus**, 3, tr., *stretch, spread out, aim*.

**dēprecor**, 1, tr., *beg (off)*.

**crēbrō**, adv., *frequently*.

**assiduus, a, um**, *incessant, constant* (cf. assiduous).

**dēfatīgō**, 1, tr., *completely weary, tire out, exhaust* (cf. fatigue).

**perpetuō**, adv., *continuously, constantly, forever*.

**sagitta, ae**, *arrow*.

duans to the rebellion, so Caesar now feared that bloodshed would render a reconciliation impossible.

<sup>47</sup> Among the Gauls the relation between a *cliēns* and his *patrōnus* was something like that between a knight and his lord in feudal Europe. It was considered a treacherous thing to desert the patron, no matter how desperate the latter's position.

<sup>48</sup> *quibus . . . eīdem*; dative of agency with the gerundive, Gr. 882.

nenda magnō ūsuī fuisse tormenta. Fabium, discessū eōrum, duābus relictīs portīs, cēterās obstruere pluteōsque vallō addere  
165 et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsum<sup>49</sup> parāre.

Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar summō studiō militum ante ortum sōlis in castra pervenit.

#### FIRST REPORTS ARRIVE AMONG THE HAEDUI

Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur,<sup>50</sup> Haeduī, primīs nuntiīs ab Litaviccō acceptīs, nūllum sibi ad cognōscendum spatium relin-  
170 quunt. Addūcit aliōs avāritia, aliōs irācundia et temeritās, quae maximē illī hominum generī est innāta, ut levem auditiōnem habeant prō rē compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānōrum diripiunt; caedēs faciunt; in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adjuvat rem prōclinātam Convictolitāvis multitudinemque ad furōrem incitat,  
175 ut, facinore admissō, ad sānitātem revertī pudeat.<sup>51</sup>

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

tormentum, ī, *device for hurling missiles; i. e., artillery.*

discessus, ūs, *departure, withdrawal, absence.*

pluteus, ī, *screen, breastwork.*

ortus, ūs, *rising.*

avāritia, ae, *greed, covetousness (cf. avarice).*

irācundia, ae, *irritability, anger.*

innātus, a, um, *inborn, innate.*

auditiō, auditiōnis, *hearsay, report (cf. audition).*

comperiō, comperire, comperī, compertus, 4, tr., *find out with certainty, discover, ascertain.*

abstrahō, abstrahere, abstrāxī, abstractus, 3, tr., *drag away, carry away.*

prōclinō, 1, tr., *bend forward, incline.*

furor, furōris, *rage, frenzy, madness (cf. fury).*

sānitās, sānitātis, *soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity.*

<sup>49</sup> in . . . cāsum: *for the morrow and a like event; i. e., for a similar attack on the morrow.*

<sup>50</sup> Dum . . . geruntur; dum, *while*, with the present indicative, Gr. 569.

<sup>51</sup> pudeat; *impersonal*, Gr. 714-716. 891.

Mārcum Aristium, tribūnum militum, iter ad legiōnem facientem, fidē datā, ex oppidō Cavillōnō ēdūcunt; idem facere cōgunt eōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōstiterant. Hōs continuō in itinere adortī, omnibus impedimentīs exuunt; repugnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multīs utrimque interfectīs, mājōrem multitudinem 180 ad arma concitant.

## NEW REPORTS ARRIVE

Interim, nuntiō allātō omnēs eōrum militēs in potestāte Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium. Nihil publicō factum cōsiliō dēmōstrant. Quaestiōnem dē bonīs direptīs dēcernunt.<sup>52</sup> Litaviccī frātrumque bona publicant. Lēgātōs ad Caesarem suī<sup>53</sup> pūr- 185 gandī causā mittunt. Haec faciunt recuperandōrum suōrum causā, sed, timōre perterritī, cōsilia clam dē bellō inire incipiunt civitātēsque reliquās sollicitant. Quae tametsī Caesar intellegēbat, tamen quam mītissimē potest lēgātōs appellat: nihil sē propter levitātem multitudinis gravius dē civitāte jūdicāre.<sup>54</sup> 190

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

Mārcus (ī) Aristius (ī), *Marcus Aristius*.

Cavillōnum, ī, *Cavillonum*, an important town of the Haedui.

repugnō, 1, intr., *fight back, resist, oppose*.

utrimque, adv., *on each side, on both sides*.

quaestiō, quaestiōnis, *inquiry, examination, investigation* (cf. *quaero*; question).

dēcernō, dēcernere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus, 3, tr., *decide, vote, decree*.

pūblicō, 1, tr., *confiscate*.

pūrgō, 1, tr., *clean, excuse, exonerate*.

clam, adv., *secretly*.

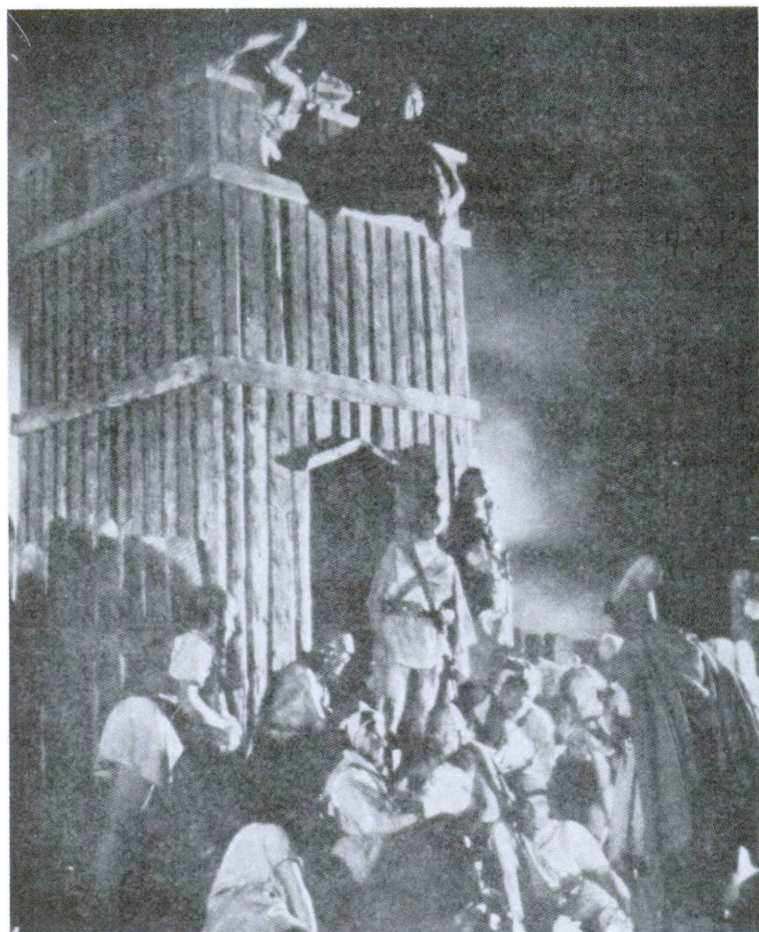
mītissimē, superlative adv., *very gently*.

levitās, levitātis, *lightness, fickleness*.

<sup>52</sup> Quaestiōnem . . . dēcernunt: *They order an inquiry*; a legal expression.

<sup>53</sup> suī; Gr. 877.

<sup>54</sup> nihil . . . jūdicāre; indirect discourse because this is what Caesar *told* the envoys.



—*Courtesy of Produzione Consorzio Scipione S. A.*

**A *Turrus* IN THE FORTIFICATIONS OF THE ENEMY**

“He himself was anticipating a greater rising in Gaul; and that he might not be surrounded by all the states, he began to plan how he might withdraw from Gergovia and once more concentrate the whole army without allowing a departure occasioned by fear of the revolt to resemble flight.

“While he reflected on these matters, a chance of successful action seemed to offer itself. He had come to the lesser camp to inspect the works, when he noticed that a hill held by the enemy, and on the previous days scarcely visible for the crowd upon it, was undefended. Surprised thereat, he asked deserters, a large number of whom were flocking to him daily, for the reason. All agreed in stating, what Caesar himself had already learnt through scouts, that the crest of the ridge there was almost level, but that this hill was wooded and narrow where it gave access to the other side of the town. For this spot the Gauls, they said, were grievously alarmed, and had now no alternative but to believe that if, after the seizure of one hill by the Romans, they lost the other, they would find themselves to be almost invested, and cut off from all egress and from foraging. Vercingetorix had accordingly called out every man to fortify this hill.

“On this information Caesar sent several troops of cavalry thither just after midnight, with orders to range in every direction in rather more noisy fashion than usual. At daybreak he commanded a large quantity of baggage-mules to be brought forth from camp, and the muleteers to take off the packs, and with helmets on their heads to ride round the hills, like cavalry to all seeming. With them he put a few cavalry, to range more widely by way of demonstration, and ordered them all to make for the same general destination by a long circuit. The proceeding was noticed afar from the town, as there was a bird’s-eye view from Gergovia into the camp; but at so great a distance the real meaning thereof could not be discovered. He despatched one legion in the same direction, and when it had advanced a little way he halted it on the lower ground and concealed it in the woods. The suspicion of the Gauls was increased, and all their force was

brought across to that spot to fortify it. When Caesar saw that the enemy's camp was empty, covering the badges of his men and concealing the war-standards, he moved soldiers from the greater to the lesser camp in small parties so as not to attract attention from the town. He showed the lieutenant-generals whom he had put in command of each legion what he wished to be done: first and foremost he instructed them to keep the troops in hand, lest in the zeal for battle or the hope of booty they might advance too far. He explained the disadvantage caused by the inequality of the ground, and said that this could be remedied by speed alone: it was a question of surprise, not of battle. After these explanations he gave the signal, and started the Aedui at the same moment by another ascent, on the right side.

"From the level where the ascent began the wall of the town was twelve hundred paces distant in a straight line, if there were no curve to consider. Any deviation added to ease the slope of necessity increased the distance to be marched. About half-way up the hill, the Gauls had put up a six-foot covering-wall of large stones, running lengthways so as to follow the contour of the height, to check our attack; and leaving all the lower area unoccupied, they had filled all the upper part of the hill, right up to the wall of the town, with their camps, closely crowded together."<sup>55</sup>

#### THE ASSAULT; ORDERS MISCARRY

Militēs, datō signō, celeriter ad mūnitiōnem perveniunt eamque trānsgressī trīnis castrīs potiuntur. Cōnsecūtus id quod animō

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

trānsgredior, trānsgredī, trānsgressus sum, 3, tr., *step over, cross.*  
trīnī, ae, a, *three (w. castra).*

<sup>55</sup> Caesar, *The Gallic War*, translated by H. J. Edwards. Loeb Classical Library, Harvard University Press. pp. 443-447.

prōposuerat,<sup>56</sup> Caesar receptū canī<sup>57</sup> jussit legiōnisque decimae, quācum erat, statim signa cōstituit.

At reliquārum legiōnum militēs, nōn auditō sonō tubae, quod 195 satis magna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen ā tribūnīs militum lēgātisque retinēbantur; sed ēlātī spē celeris victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundis proeliis, nihil adeō arduum sibi esse existimāvērunt, quod nōn virtūte cōsequi possent, neque prius finem sequendī fēcērunt quam mūrō oppidī portisque ap- 200 propinquārunt.

Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī longius aberant repentinō tumultū perterriti, cum hostēs intrā portās esse existimārent, sēsē ex oppidō ējēcērunt.

“Lucius Fabius, a centurion of the Eighth Legion, who was known to have said that day among his company that he was spurred on by the rewards at Avaricum, and would allow no one to mount the wall before him, got three men of his company, was lifted up by them, and mounted the wall. Then he in turn took hold of them one by one and pulled them up on to the wall.”<sup>58</sup>

Interim eī, quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā dēmōn- 205 strāvimus, mūnitiōnis causā convēnerant, primō auditō clāmōre,

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

receptus, ūs, *retreat*.

canō, canere, cecinī, cantum, 3, intr., *sing, sound*.

sonus, ī, *sound*.

tuba, ae, *trumpet*.

arduus, a, um, *high, steep, difficult*.

tumultus, ūs, *uproar, confusion, disorder*.

<sup>56</sup> It is not clear exactly what Caesar's original plan was. At any rate, his plans miscarried and a successful withdrawal was achieved.

<sup>57</sup> *receptū canī*: *retreat (or recall) to be sounded*.

<sup>58</sup> *The Gallic War*, tr. by H. J. Edwards, p. 449.

inde etiam crēbrīs nuntiīs incitātī, oppidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equitibus magnō cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut<sup>59</sup> quisque prīmus vēnerat, sub mūrō cōsistēbat suōrumque pug-  
 210 nantium numerum augēbat.

#### THE ROMANS IN DESPERATE STRAITS

Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō; nam et cursū et spatiō pugnae dēfatīgātī, nōn facile recentēs et integrōs sustinēbant.

Caesar, cum inīquō locō pugnārī hostiumque cōpiās augērī  
 215 vidēret, praemetuēs suīs,<sup>60</sup> ad Titum Sextium, lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō reliquerat, mīsit ut cohortēs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub īnfimō colle ab dextrō latere hostium cōstitueret, ut, sī nostrōs locō dējectōs vīdisset, impedīret hostēs quōminus liberē īnsequerentur.<sup>61</sup> Ipse paulum ex eō locō ubi cōn-  
 220 stīterat cum legiōne prōgressus, ēventum pugnae expectābat.

#### FRESH DISORDER; THE HAEDUAN REINFORCEMENTS MISTAKEN FOR FOES

Cum ācerrimē comminus pugnārētur, hostēs locō et numerō, nōstrī virtūte cōnfīderent, subitō sunt Haeduī visī ab latere nos-

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

praemetuō, praemetuere, praemetuī, 3, intr., *fear, am apprehensive.*

Titus (ī) Sextius (ī), *Titus Sextius.*

īnfimus, a, um, *lowest.*

dexter, dextra, dextrum, *on the right, right.*

comminus, adv., *hand to hand, in close contest.*

<sup>59</sup> ut, as; for the tenses see Gr. 542, 544.

<sup>60</sup> suīs: for his men; dative of reference, Gr. 726.

<sup>61</sup> impedīret . . . quōminus . . . īnsequerentur: *hinder . . . from pursuing;* Gr. 646.

trīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū mīserat. Hī similitūdine<sup>62</sup> armōrum vehemēter nostrōs perterruērunt, ac, tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs<sup>63</sup> animadvertēbantur, quod in-<sup>225</sup>signe pācātōrum esse cōsuērat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā militēs ab hostibus factum existimābant. Eōdem tempore Lūcius Fabius, centuriō, quīque ūnā mūrum ascenderant, circumventī atque interfectī, mūrō dējiciēbantur.

Mārcus Petrōnius, ējusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās ex-<sup>230</sup>cidere cōnātus est, ā multitudīne oppressus ac sibi<sup>64</sup> dēspērāns, multīs jam vulneribus acceptīs, manipulāribus suīs quī illum secūtī erant, "Quoniam," inquit, "mē ūnā vōbiscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae certē vitae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditate glōriae adductus in perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultate vōbīs cōsulite."<sup>235</sup> Simul in mediōs hostēs irrūpit duōbusque interfectīs reliquōs ā

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

similitūdō, similitūdinis, *likeness, resemblance.*

umerus, ī, *shoulder.*

exserō, exserere, exseruī, exsertus, 3, tr., *uncover.*

īsigne, īsignis, *sign.*

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus, 3, tr., *deceive, cheat, disappoint* (cf. false).

Lūcius (ī) Fabius (ī), *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion of the eighth legion.

Mārcus (ī) Petrōnius (ī), *Marcus Petronius*, a centurion of the eighth legion.

excidō, excidere, excidī, excisus, 3, tr., *hew away, hew down.*

manipulāris, e, *of a maniple*; as noun: *common soldier.*

prōspiciō, prōspicere, prōspexī, prōspectum, 3, intr.; w. dat., *look forward, see to, provide for.*

irrupō, irrupere, irrūpī, irruptus, 3, tr., *break into, rush into.*

<sup>62</sup> That is, their appearance resembled the rest of the Gauls.

<sup>63</sup> *dextrīs umerīs exsertīs*: *with their right shoulders bare*; ablative of description, Gr. 762. This was a sign that they were allies of the Romans.

<sup>64</sup> *sibi*; dative of reference, Gr. 726.



#### MARCUS PETRONIUS SAVES THE MEN OF HIS COMPANY

portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī suīs, “Frūstrā,” inquit, “meae vītae subvenīre cōnāminī quem jam sanguis vīrēsq̄ue dēficiunt. Proinde abīte, dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem  
240 recipite.” Ita pugnāns post paulum concidit ac suīs salūtī fuit.<sup>65</sup>

#### THE ROMANS RETREAT

Nostrī, cum undique premerentur, dējectī sunt locō. Sed Gallōs vehementius īnsequentēs legiō decima impedīvit, quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre locō cōstiterat. Hanc rūsus tertiāe decimāe legiōnis cohortēs excēperunt, quae, ex castrīs minōribus ēductae

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**submoveō, submovēre, submōvī, submōtus, 2, tr.,** *move away, drive away, dislodge.*

**auxilior, 1, intr.;** w. dat., *give aid, help, assist, render assistance.*

**subveniō, subvenīre, subvēnī, subventum, 4, intr.;** w. dat., *come to help, aid.*

**sanguis, sanguinis, m.,** *blood.*

**excipiō, excipere, excēpī, exceptus, 3, tr. and intr.,** *take up, catch, receive.*

---

<sup>65</sup> suīs salūtī fuit; a fitting epitaph for a courageous soldier.

cum Titō Sextiō, lēgātō, cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs, ubi <sup>245</sup> primum ad plānitiem pervēnērunt, īnfestis contrā hostēs signīs<sup>66</sup> cōstitērunt. Vercingetorix ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā mūnitiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē militēs sunt paulō minus septingentī dēsiderāti.

“Next day Caesar paraded his troops, and reprimanded them for the rashness and impetuosity which they had shown in judging for themselves how far they were to advance and what they were to do, not halting when the signal was given for recall, and refusing to submit to the control of the tribunes and the generals. He explained that an unfavourable position made a serious difference; he had experienced this himself at Avaricum, when, though he had the enemy in his grasp without their general and without their cavalry, he had foregone an assured triumph for fear the unfavourable ground should entail a loss, however slight, in the action. He heartily admired their heroic spirit, which entrenched camp and high mountain and walled fortress were powerless to daunt; but just as heartily he reprobated their contempt for discipline and their presumption in imagining that they knew how to win battles and forecast results better than their general. He required from his soldiers obedience and self-control just as much as courage and heroism.”<sup>67</sup>

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

plānitiēs, plānitiēi, *level ground, plain.*

īnfestus, a, um, *hostile.*

septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred.*

dēsiderō, 1, tr., *miss, lose, desire.*

---

<sup>66</sup> īnfestis . . . signīs: *with hostile . . . standards; i. e., with standards in battle array (facing the enemy).* As soon as the legions reached level ground they reformed for battle.

<sup>67</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, translated by T. Rice Holmes. London. Macmillan, 1908. pp. 245-246.

250 Hāc habitā cōtiōne et ad extrēmum cōfirmātis mīlitibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur, neu quod inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī hostium tribuerent, eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae ante sēserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōstituit. Cum Vercingetorix autem in aequum locum  
255 nōn dēscenderet, levī factō equestrī proeliō atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum redūxit.

#### CAESAR WITHDRAWS TO THE TERRITORY OF THE HAEDUI

Cum hoc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentatiōnem minuendam mīlitumque animōs cōfirmāndōs<sup>68</sup> factum existimāns, in Haeduōs mōvit castra.

#### FRESH RUMORS OF REBELLION AMONG THE HAEDUI

260 Nē tum quidem īsecūtis hostibus, tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver vēnit; pontem reficit exercitumque trādūcit. Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdorige, Haeduīs, appellātus, discit cum omnī equitatū Litaviccum ad sollicitandōs Haeduōs esse profectum; opus esse ipsōs antecēdere ad cōfirmandam civitātem. Etsī multīs jam

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

inīquitās, inīquitātis, *inequality, unfairness, disadvantage* (cf. iniquity; in, *not + aequus*).

cōgitō, 1, tr. and intr., *ponder, think, plan*.

Gallicus, a, um, *pertaining to Gaul, Gallic*.

ostentatiō, ostentatiōnis, *display, pretense, pride* (cf. ostentō; ostentation).

discō, discere, didicī, 3, tr. and intr., *learn* (cf. disciple).

opus est, esse, fuit, intr.; w. infin., *there is need, it is necessary*.

---

<sup>68</sup> Caesar offered battle to Vercingetorix only to restore the confidence of his men.

rēbus perfidiam Haeduōrum perspectam habēbat<sup>69</sup> atque hōrum 265  
 discessū mātūrārī dēfectiōnem civitātis existimābat, tamen eōs  
 retinendōs nōn cēnsuit, nē aut inferre injūriam vidērētur aut  
 daret timōris aliquam suspīciōnem. Discēdentibus hīs breviter  
 sua in Haeduōs merita exposuit.

#### CAESAR'S MOST IMPORTANT ALLIES JOIN THE REVOLT

Noviodūnum<sup>70</sup> erat oppidum Haeduōrum ad ripās Ligeris op- 270  
 portūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesar omnēs obsidēs Galliae, frū-  
 mentum, pecūniam pūblicam, suōrum atque exercitūs impedī-  
 mentōrum magnam partem contulerat. Hūc magnum numerum  
 equōrum hūjus bellī causā in Italiā et Hispāniā coēptum mī-  
 serat. Eō cum Eporēdorīx Viridomārusque vēnissent et dē statū 275  
 civitātis cognōvissent, Litavicum<sup>71</sup> Bibracte<sup>72</sup> ab Haeduīs recep-  
 tum, quod est oppidum apud eōs maximae auctōritātis; Convictō-  
 litāvem, magistrātum, magnamque partem senātūs ad eum con-

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**perfidia**, ae, *treachery, perfidy.*

**mātūrō**, 1, tr. and intr., *make haste, hasten.*

**dēfectiō**, dēfectiōnis, *desertion, revolt.*

**coemō**, coemere, coēmī, coēptus, 3, tr., *buy, buy up.*

**status**, ūs, *condition, position.*

**Bibracte**, Bibractis, *Bibracte* (bī brāk'tē), the chief town of the Haedui.

<sup>69</sup> **perfidiam . . . perspectam habēbat**: *he had the treachery . . . perceived; i. e., he clearly perceived the treachery.*

<sup>70</sup> Not to be confused with the town of the Suessiones by the same name mentioned on pages 59 and 184.

<sup>71</sup> Indirect discourse, expressing what Eporedorix and Viridomarus learned about the condition of Haeduan affairs, continues to **pūblicē missōs** (line 280).

<sup>72</sup> **Bibracte**; locative, Gr. 30.

vēnisse; lēgātōs ad Vercingetorīgē dē pāce et amicitīā concili-  
 280 andā publicē missōs, nōn praetermittendum tantum commodum  
 existimāverunt. Itaque interfectīs Noviodūnī custōdibus quīque  
 eō negōtiandī causā convēnerant, pecūniam atque equōs inter sē  
 partītī sunt. Obsidēs cīvitatū Bibracte ad magistrātum dēdū-  
 cendōs cūrāverunt. Oppidum, quod ā sē tenērī nōn posse iūdicā-  
 285 bant, nē cui esset ūsuī Rōmānīs, incendērunt. Frūmentī quod  
 subitō potuērunt, nāvibus āvexērunt; reliquum flūmine atque in-  
 cendiō corrupērunt. Ipsī ex finitimīs regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere,  
 praesidia custōdiāsque ad ripās Ligeris dispōnere, equitātumque  
 omnibus locīs injiciendī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt, ut ab  
 290 rē frūmentāriā Rōmānōs prohibēre possent. Quam ad spem mul-  
 tum eōs adjuvābat, quod Liger ex nivibus crēverat, ut omnīnō  
 vadō nōn posse trānsīrī vidērētur.

“On learning this Caesar decided that he must make speed, if the completion of the bridges was to be adventured, in order to fight a decisive battle before larger forces had been collected at the river. As for changing his plan and turning his march into the Province, even apprehension did not seem to necessitate it: there was the shame and disgrace of the thing, as well as the barrier of the Cevennes and the difficulty of the roads, to prevent it, and more especially there was his pressing anxiety for Labienus and the legions which he had sent with him on a separate mission.”<sup>73</sup>

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**praetermittō, praetermittere, praetermīsī, praetermissus, 3, tr.,** *send by, let pass, overlook.*

**partior, 4, tr.,** *part, share, divide* (cf. *pars*).

**āvehō, āvehere, āvexī, āvectus, 3, tr.,** *carry away, take away.*

**corrumpō, corrumpere, corrupī, corruptus, 3, tr.,** *destroy, ruin* (cf. *corrupt*).

**injiciō, injicere, injēcī, injectus, 3, tr.;** in w. acc., *throw in, throw on, inspire in*  
**crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, 3, intr.,** *grow, increase* (in size, power, age, etc.)

---

<sup>73</sup> *The Gallic War*, tr. by H. J. Edwards, p. 461.

## PART III

## FROM THE DEFECTION OF THE HAEDUI TO THE FALL OF ALESIA

## THE CRISIS OF THE WAR

“Cavalry were scouring the country to cut off his supplies, and infantry threatening to prevent him from crossing the Loire. The water, swollen by the melting of the mountain snows, was rushing like a torrent. Caesar saw the crisis of the war had come. The Aeduan infantry had deserted him. The Arverni, elated by their victory, were on his rear; on his left the Bituriges, exasperated by the bitter memory of Avaricum: the perfidious Aedui barred the road in front. His chief magazine was destroyed; and his supplies were fast running out. The Province itself was insufficiently protected. The object of the Aedui was to hem him in between the Allier and the Loire, and there starve him into surrender; or if, in desperation, he should make a dash for the Province, to cut him off from the easier way over the Loire, and drive him back towards the Cevennes into the awaiting clutches of Vercingetorix. Retreat, however, was not to be thought of: with the mountains barring the way, it would be very difficult as well as disgraceful; and, above all, he could not leave Labienus and his four legions to perish.”<sup>1</sup> And in the crisis, Caesar acted, as usual, with determined swiftness.

Itaque, admodum magnīs diurnīs nocturnīsque itineribus cōnfectīs, contrā omnium opīniōnem ad Ligerim vēnit, vadōque per equitēs repertō prō rei necessitāte opportūnō, ut bracchia modo

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

opīniō, opīniōnis, *expectation, reputation, opinion.*

bracchium, ī, *arm, forearm.*

<sup>1</sup> T. Rice Holmes, *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul*, p. 160.

atque umerī ad sustinenda arma liberī ab aquā esse possent,  
 5 dispositō equitatū, quī vim flūminis refringeret<sup>2</sup> atque, hostibus  
 primō aspectū perturbātis, incolumem exercitum trādūxit. Frū-  
 mentum in agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus, iter in Senonēs facere  
 instituit.

### THE CAMPAIGN OF LABIENUS

Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus, eō supplēmētō  
 10 quod nūper ex Italiā vēnerat relictō Agedincī, ut esset impedi-  
 mentis praesidiō, cum quattuor legiōnibus Lutetiam proficiscitur.  
 Id est oppidum Parisiōrum, positum in insulā<sup>3</sup> flūminis Sēquanae.  
 Cūjus adventū ab hostibus cognitō, magnae ex finitimis civitā-  
 tibus cōpiae convēnerunt. Summa imperiī trāditur Camulogenō,  
 15 Aulercō, quī prope cōfectus aetate, tamen propter singulārem  
 scientiam rei militāris ad eum est honōrem ēvocātus. Is, cum  
 animadvertisset perpetuam esse palūdem quae influeret in Sē-  
 quanam atque illum omnem locum magnōpere impediret, hic

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**refringō, refringere, refrēgī, refractus**, 3, tr., *break in, break open, break, diminish* (cf. refraction).

**aspectus, ūs, look, appearance, aspect.**

**pecus, pecoris, n, cattle, a herd.**

**Lutetia, ae, Lutetia** (lū tē'shī à), the capital of the Parisii (now Paris).

**Sēquana, ae, the Sequana** (sek'wān à) or *Seine* (sān), a river.

**Camulogenus, ī, Camulogenus** (cām ú löj'é nūs), a chief of the Aulerci.

**Aulercus, ī, one of the Aulerci** (ä lēr'sī).

**ēvocō, 1, tr., call forth, call out, summon** (cf. evoke).

**perpetuus, a, um, continuous, permanent, whole** (cf. perpetual).

**influō, influere, inflūxī, 3, intr., flow into, empty into** (cf. influx).

**magnōpere, adv., especially, greatly, exceedingly.**

---

<sup>2</sup> The cavalry formed a living dam across the river to break the current. The legions passed over below them.

<sup>3</sup> The Île de la Cité, now a part of Paris and the site of Notre Dame Cathedral.

cōnsēdit nostrōsque trānsitū prohibēre instituit. Labiēnus primō vineās agere, crātibus atque aggere palūdem complēre atque iter 20 mūnīre cōnābātur. Postquam id difficilīus fierī animadvertit, silentiō ē castrīs tertiā vigiliā ēgressus, eōdem, quō vēnerat, itinere Metiosēdum pervenit. Id est oppidum Senonum in insulā Sē-quanae positum, ut paulō ante dē Lutetiā diximus. Dēprehēnsīs nāvibus circiter quīnquāgintā celeriterque conjūctīs atque eō 25 militibus impositis et rei novitate perterritis oppidānīs, quōrum magna pars erat ad bellum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potitur. Refectō ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exercitum trādūcit. Secundō flūmine<sup>4</sup> ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostēs, rē cognitā ab eīs qui Metiosēdō fūgerant, Lutetiam 30 incendi pontēsque ējus oppidī rescindi jubent. Ipsī profecti ā palūde in ripā Sēquanae ē regiōne Lutetiae contrā Labiēnī castra cōnsidunt.<sup>5</sup>

NEWS FROM THE SOUTH FORCES LABIENUS TO TAKE  
DEFENSIVE MEASURES. HIS DIFFICULTIES IN  
RETURNING TO HIS BASE

Jam Caesar ā Gergoviā<sup>6</sup> discessisse audiēbātur ; jam dē Haedu-

WORDS TO REMEMBER

trānsitus, ūs, *crossing, passage* (cf. trānseō).

crātēs, crātium, *wickerwork, fascine* (bundle of sticks for filling trenches, etc.).

agger, aggeris, *earth, embankment, mound, rampart*.

Metiosēdum, ī, *Metiosedum* (mē shi ó sē'dūm), a town of the Senones.

quīnquāgintā, indecl. numeral, *fifty*.

impōnō, impōnere, imposuī, impositus, 3, tr., *place upon, impose on, mount*.

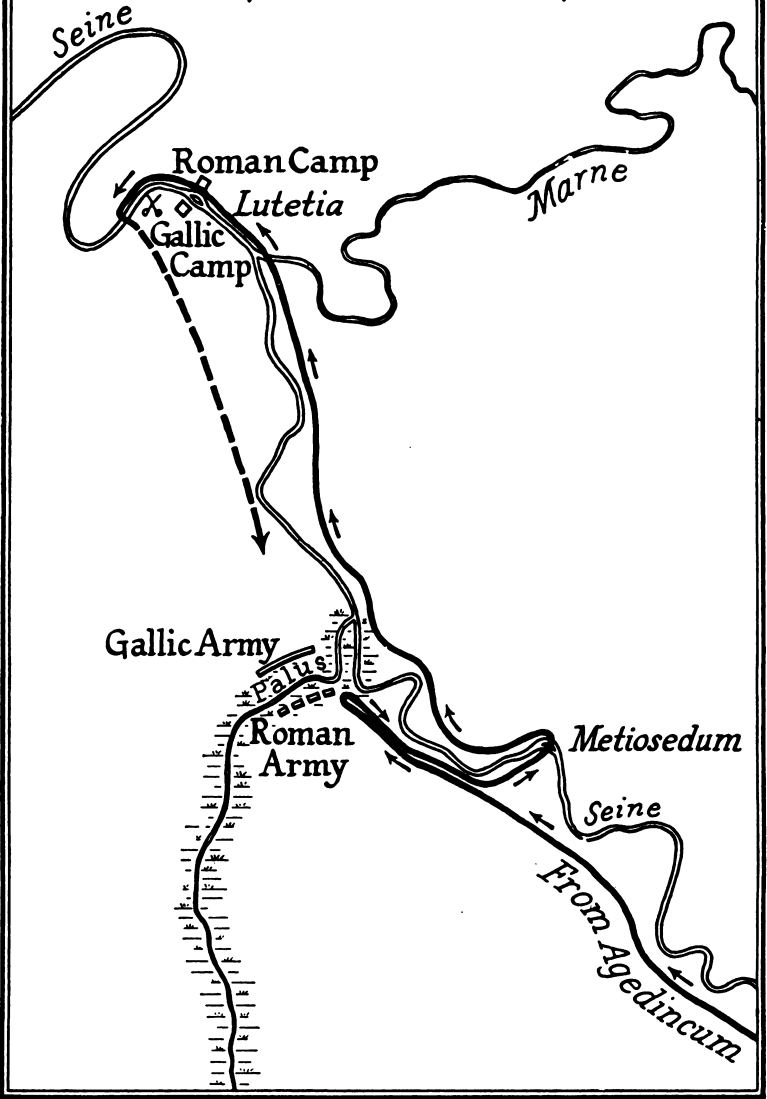
novitās, novitātis, *newness, strangeness*.

<sup>4</sup> *secundō flūmine*: lit., *with the stream favorable*; i. e., *downstream*.

<sup>5</sup> The Gauls were thus encamped on the left bank of the river, opposite Lutetia.

<sup>6</sup> With names of towns ā means *from the neighborhood of*; the ablative alone would otherwise be used, Gr. 916.

# LABIENUS'S CAMPAIGN AGAINST CAMULOGENUS



ōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū nuntii afferēbantur ; Gal- 35  
 lique interclūsum itinere et Ligerī Caesarem, inopiā frūmentī  
 coāctum, in prōvinciam contendisse cōfirmābant. Bellovacī,  
 autem, dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cognitā, quī jam ante erant per  
 sē infidēlēs, manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt.  
 Tum Labiēnus tantā rērum commūtātiōne longē aliud sibi 40  
 capiendum cōsiliū atque<sup>7</sup> antea sēserat intellegēbat, neque  
 jam ut aliquid acquireret proeliōque hostēs lacesseret, sed ut  
 incolumem exercitum Agedincum redūceret, cōgitābat. Namque  
 alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae civitās in Galliā maximam habet  
 opiniōnem virtūtis, bellum parābant, alteram Camulogenus parātō 45  
 atque instrūctō exercitū tenēbat. Tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque  
 impedimentis maximō flūmine interclūdēbantur. Tantīs subitō  
 difficultātibus objectīs, ab animī virtūte auxiliū petendum  
 vidēbat.

#### LABIENUS CROSSES THE SEINE BY A STRATAGEM

Itaque sub vesperum<sup>8</sup> conciliō convocātō, cohortātus ut ea quae 50  
 imperāset diligenter administrārent, nāvēs, quās Metiosēdō dē-  
 dūxerat, singulās equitibus Rōmānīs attribuit et, primā cōfectā  
 vigiliā, quattuor milia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredi

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

mōtus, ūs, *uprising, disturbance.*

interclūdō, interclūdere, interclūsī, interclūsus, 3, tr., *shut off, cut off.*

infidēlis, e, *faithless, untrustworthy* (cf. infidel; fidēs; in, not + fidēlis).

commūtātiō, commūtātiōnis, *a changing, change.*

acquirō, acquirere, acqūisīvī, acqūisītus, 3, tr., *seek in addition, gain in addi-  
 tion, win, acquire.*

laccessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītus, 3, tr., *harass, provoke, attack.*

vesper, vesperī, *evening* (cf. vespers).

---

<sup>7</sup> aliud . . . atque: *other . . . than*; Gr. ὁ10.

<sup>8</sup> sub vesperum: *towards evening.*

ibique sē exspectāre jubet. Quīnque cohortēs quās minimē firmās  
 55 ad dīmīcandum esse exīstimābat, castrīs praesidiō relinquit; quīn-  
 que ējusdem legiōnis reliquās cohortēs dē mediā nocte cum omni-  
 bus impedimentīs adversō flūmine<sup>9</sup> magnō tumultū proficiscī  
 imperat.<sup>10</sup> Conquirit etiam lintrēs; hās magnō sonitū rēmōrum  
 incitātās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgres-  
 60 sus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit quō nāvēs appellī  
 jusserat. Eō cum esset ventum, explōrātōrēs hostium, ut<sup>11</sup> omnī  
 flūminis parte erant dispositī, inopināntēs, quod magna subitō  
 erat coorta tempestās, ab nostrīs opprimuntur; exercitus equitā-  
 tusque, equitibus Rōmānīs administrantibus quōs eī rei prae-  
 65 fēcerat, celeriter trānsportātur. Ūnō ferē tempore sub lūcem<sup>12</sup>  
 hostibus nuntiātur in castrīs Rōmānōrum praeter cōsuētūdinem  
 tumultuārī et magnum ire agmen adversō flūmine<sup>9</sup> sonitumque  
 rēmōrum in eādē parte exaudiri et paulō infrā militēs nāvibus  
 trānsportārī. Quibus rēbus auditīs, quod exīstimābant tribus locīs  
 70 trānsire legiōnēs atque omnēs perturbātōs dēfectiōne Haeduōrum

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**conquīrō, conquīrere, conquīsivī, conquīsitus**, 3, tr., *seek for carefully, search for, hunt up.*

**linter, lintris, skiff, rowboat, canoe.**

**sonitus, ūs, sound, din.**

**rēmūs, ī, oar.**

**appellō, appellere, appulī, appulsus**, 3, tr., *bring to land, bring together.*

**inopināns** (*gen. inopināntis*), *not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard.*

**coorior, cooriri, coortus sum**, 4, intr., *arise, spring up, break out.*

**tumultuor**, 1, intr., *make a disturbance* (cf. tumult).

**infrā**, adv., *below* (cf. infrared).

<sup>9</sup> **adversō flūmine**: lit., *with the stream opposed*; i. e., *upstream*; cf. **secundō flūmine**, note 4, page 229.

<sup>10</sup> **Imperō** regularly takes an *ut* noun clause, but Caesar often uses after it a passive or, as here, a deponent infinitive.

<sup>11</sup> **ut, as.**

<sup>12</sup> **sub lūcem**: *towards daybreak.*

fugam parāre, suās quoque cōpiās in trēs partēs distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relictō et parvā manū Metiosēdum versus missā, quae tantum prōgrederētur quantum nāvēs prōcessissent, reliquās cōpiās contrā Labiēnum dūxērunt.

#### LABIENUS CLEARS THE ROAD SOUTHWARD BY BATTLE

Primā lūce et nostrī omnēs erant trānsportātī, et hostium aciēs 75 cernēbātur. Labiēnus militēs cohortātus est ut suae pristināe virtūtis et tot secundissimōrum proeliōrum retinērent memoriā atque ipsum Caesarem, cūjus ductū saepissimē hostēs superāvisent, praesentem adesse exīstimārent. Dat signum proeliī. Primō concursū ab dextrō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōstiterat, hostēs 80 pelluntur atque in fugam conjiciuntur; ab sinistrō, quem locum duodecima legiō tenēbat, cum primī ōrdinēs hostium trānsfixī pīlis concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, nec dabat suspiciōnem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suīs aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. At incertō etiam nunc exitū 85 victōriae, cum septimae legiōnis tribūnīs esset nuntiātum, quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur, post tergum hostium legiōnem ostendērunt signaque intulērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam cessit, sed circumventī omnēs interfectīque sunt. Eandem fortūnam tulit Camulogenus. At eī quī in praesidiō contrā castra 90

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessī, prōcessum**, 3, intr., *go forward, proceed, advance.*

**cernō, cernere**, 3, tr., *see, perceive.*

**ductus, ūs**, *leading, command* (cf. ductless gland; **dūcō, dux**).

**conkursus, ūs**, *a running together, attack, onset, collision* (cf. concourse).

**cornū, ūs**, *horn* (of an army), *flank, wing.*

**septimus, a, um**, *seventh.*

**sinister, sinistra, sinistrum**, *left.*

**duodecimus, a, um**, *twelfth.*

**trānsfigō, trānsfigere, trānsfixī, trānsfixus**, 3, tr., *thrust, pierce through, transfix.*

**concidō, concidere, concidī**, 3, intr., *fall down, collapse.*

**tergum, ī**, *back, rear.*

Labiēnī erant relictī, cum proelium commissum audissent, subsidiō suis iērun̄t collemque cēpērunt neque nostrōrum militum victōrum impetum sustinēre potuerunt. Sic cum suis fugientibus permixtī, quōs nōn silvae montēsque tēxērunt, ab equitātū sunt  
 95 interfectī. Hōc negōtiō cōfectō, Labiēnus revertitur Agedincum, ubi impedimenta tōtīus exercitūs relicta erant. Inde cum omnibus cōpiis ad Caesarem pervenit.<sup>13</sup>

#### THE FIRE OF REVOLT ENVELOPS ALL GAUL

Dēfectiōne Haeduōrum cognitā, bellum augētur. Lēgatiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grātiā, auctōritāte,  
 100 pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs nītuntur. Nactī obsidēs, quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorīge Haeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendī commūnicet. Rē impetrātā, contendunt ut ipsīs summa imperiī trādātur, et, rē in contrōversiam dēductā,  
 105 tōtīus Galliae concilium Bibracte convocātur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs rēs permittitur. Ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc conciliō

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**permisceō, permiscēre, permiscuī, permixtus**, 2, tr., *mix thoroughly, mingle.*

**tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctus**, 3, tr., *cover, hide, protect, defend.*

**valeō, valēre, valuī, valitūrus**, 2, intr., *am strong, am vigorous, am influential* (cf. *valid*).

**nitor, niti, nixus sum**, 3, intr., *rest upon, rely upon, exert one's self, strive, endeavor.*

**dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposuī, dēpositus**, 3, tr., *lay down, give up, station, deposit.*

**terrītō**, 1, tr., *frighten, terrify, alarm* (cf. *terreō*).

**frequēns** (*gen. frequentis*), *in great numbers, in crowds.*

**suffrāgium, ī**, *vote, ballot* (cf. *suffrage*).

---

<sup>13</sup> Labienus joined forces with Caesar, probably somewhere on the road between Agedincum and Noviodunum.

Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt; illī, quod amīcitiām Rōmānōrum sequēbantur, Trēverī quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs 110 auxilia mitterent.

THE HAEDUI ARE DISAFFECTED BY THEIR FAILURE TO  
GAIN THE LEADERSHIP OF THE REBELLION

Magnō dolōre Haeduī ferunt sē dējectōs principātū; queruntur fortunae commūtatiōnem et Caesaris in sē indulgentiam requirunt, neque tamen susceptō bellō suum cōsiliū ab reliquīs sēparāre audent. Inuitī summae speī adulēscentēs, Eporēdorix et 115 Viridomārus, Vercingetorigī pārent.

VERCINGETORIX'S PLAN: STARVATION OF THE FORCES  
IN GAUL, INVASION OF THE ROMAN PROVINCE

Ille imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs diemque eī reī cōstituit. Dēnique hūc omnēs equitēs, quīndecim mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre jubet; peditātū quem antea habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit, neque fortunam temptātūrum aut aciē dīmi- 120

WORDS TO REMEMBER

Rēmī, Rēmōrum, *the Remi* (rē'mī).

Trēverī, Trēverōrum, *the Treveri* (trēv'ē rī).

quārē, adv., *why, wherefore*.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither* (cf. neuter).

indulgentia, ae, *forbearance, clemency* (cf. indulgence).

requirō, requirere, requisivī, requisitus, 3, tr., *feel the need of, require, desire*.

sēparō, 1, tr., *separate*.

inuitus, a, um, *unwilling, reluctant*.

pāreō, pārere, pārui, 2, intr.; w. dat., *obey, yield to, am subject to*.

dēnique, adv., *thereupon, finally*.

quīndecim, indecl. numeral, *fifteen*.

contentus, a, um, *satisfied, contented*.

temptō, 1, tr., *make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack, try, test, try to win over* (cf. temptation).

cātūrum, sed facile esse factū<sup>14</sup> frūmentō et commeātū Rōmānōs prohibēre, aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant;<sup>15</sup> hōc modō perpetuum imperium libertatemque sē esse cōsecūtūrōs. Hīs cōstitutīs rēbus, Haediū  
 125 Segusiāvīsq̄ue, quī sunt finitimī prōvinciae, decem mīlia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs octingentōs. Hīs praeficit frātrē Eporēdorīgīs bellumque inferre Allobrogibus jubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs; Rutēnōs vērō Cadurcōsque ad finēs Volcārum Arecomicōrum vastandōs  
 130 mittit. Nihilō minus nuntiīs lēgātīōnibusque Allobrogēs sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō<sup>16</sup> resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitatī autem imperium tōtius provinciae pollicētur.

#### THE PROVINCIAL DEFENSES

Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvisa erant praesidia cohortium duarū  
 135 et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvincia ab Lūciō Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helviī suā sponte cum finitimīs

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

Segusiāvī, Segusiāvōrum, *the Segusiavi* (sé gú shi á'vī).

pedes, peditis, *foot soldier* (pl. *infantry*).

octingentī, ae, a, *eight hundred*.

nihilō minus, adv., *no less, nevertheless*.

mēns, mentis, *mind, intellect*.

residō, residere, resēdī, 3, intr., *settle, become calm*.

Lūcius (ī) Caesar (Caesaris), *Lucius Caesar*.

oppōnō, oppōnere, opposuī, oppositus, 3, tr., *place against, oppose*.

---

<sup>14</sup> facile . . . factū: *easy in respect to doing; i. e., easy to do; factū* is a supine used to express *respect*, Gr. 861-863.

<sup>15</sup> modo corrumpant . . . incendant: *provided only they would destroy . . . and burn; Gr. 594.*

<sup>16</sup> A revolt of the Allobroges, who lived within the Province, had been put down in 61 B. C.

proeliō congressī pelluntur et, Gājō Valeriō Domnotaurō, Cabūrī filiō, prīncipe cīvitātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs, intrā oppida mūrōsque compelluntur. Allobrogēs, crēbris ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis, magnā cum diligeniā suōs finēs tuentur. 140

CUT OFF FROM THE PROVINCE, CAESAR RAISES TROOPS  
IN GERMANY

Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat et, interclūsīs omnibus itineribus, nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Italiā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat, equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, quī inter eōs pugnāre cō- 145 suērānt.<sup>17</sup> Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs<sup>18</sup> ūtēbantur, ā tribūnis militum reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānis equōs sūmit Germānisque distribuit.

THE GALLIC HOST ASSEMBLES

Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēs- que, quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī, conveniunt. Magnō hōrum 150 coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum finēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset,

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**congregior, congregī, congressus sum, 3, intr., meet, encounter, meet in battle** (cf. congress).

**Gājus (ī) Valerius (ī) Domnotaurus (ī), Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus** (dōm-  
nō tā'rūs).

**Cabūrus, ī, Caburus** (cāb'ū rūs).

**tueor, tuērī, tūtus sum, 2, tr., watch, guard, protect.**

**armātūra, ae, armor, equipment.**

---

<sup>17</sup> quī inter eōs pugnāre cōsuērānt; the German cavalry was accompanied into action by light-armed runners who clung to the horses' mane. Thus the Germans combined the advantages of cavalry and infantry.

<sup>18</sup> The German horses were too small and light.

circiter mīlia passuum decem ab Rōmānīs Vercingetorīx trīnīs  
 castrīs cōnsēdit, convocātisque ad concilium praefectīs equitum,  
 155 vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat; fugere in prōvinciam Rō-  
 mānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam  
 libertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem nōn multum  
 prōdesse; mājōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs, Rōmānōs reversūrōs  
 neque finem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde in agmine impedītōs  
 160 adorianur. Sī peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur,  
 iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōnfīdat, relictīs  
 impedimentīs suae salūtī cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum  
 et dignitāte spoliātum irī.<sup>19</sup> Nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn<sup>20</sup>  
 nēmō eōrum prōgredi modo extrā agmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem  
 165 dēbere dubitāre. Id quō mājore faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs  
 prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōrī hostibus futūrum.

#### THE GAULS APPROVE THE PLAN OF ATTACK

“With one voice the knights exclaimed that every man must be sworn by a solemn oath to ride twice through the enemy’s column, or never be admitted beneath a roof, never come nigh unto children, or parents, or wife.

“The proposal was approved; and every man was sworn. Next day the cavalry were divided into three sections, two of which made a demonstration on either flank, while the third checked the advance of the vanguard.”<sup>21</sup>

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, irreg., intr., *am useful, benefit.*

bellō, 1, intr., *make war, carry on war, wage war* (cf. bellum; rebellion).

dignitās, dignitātis, *dignity, merit, rank.*

spoliō, 1, tr., *strip, despoil* (cf. spoliation).

---

<sup>19</sup> spoliātum irī; future passive infinitive.

<sup>20</sup> quīn, *that*; Gr. 651.

<sup>21</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes, pp. 257-258.

## THE ATTACK ON CAESAR'S COLUMN

Quā rē nuntiātā, Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripertitō dīvisum contrā hostem ire iubet. Pugnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōsistit agmen; impedimenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō 170 signa inferrī Caesar aciemque convertī jubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs insequentēs impediēbat et nostrōs spē auxilii cōfirmābat. Tandem, Germānī dē dextrō latere summum jugum nactī hostēs locō dējiciunt; fugientēs usque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā, reliquī, nē circumvenirentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī Haeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur.

## VERCINGETORIX RETREATS TO ALESIA

Repulsō omnī equitātū,<sup>22</sup> Vercingetorix cōpiās suās ut prō castris collocāverat<sup>23</sup> redūxit cōnfestimque Alesiam, quod est 180 oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castris ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar, impedimentis in proximum collem dēductis, duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relictis,

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

*tripertitō*, adv., *in three parts, in three divisions* (cf. *trēs, pars*).

*pedester, pedestris, pedestre*, *on foot, foot*.

*Alesia*, ae, *Alesia* (ā lē'shī ā), a town of the Mandubii (now Alise-Ste-Reine).

*Mandubii, Mandubiōrum, the Mandubii* (mān dū'bī ī).

<sup>22</sup> *Repulsō omnī equitātū*; Vercingetorix knew that his troops could not win a pitched battle with the Romans. His whole earlier strategy was based on avoiding a decision in the field. He now miscalculated and erred in attacking the Roman column. He sacrificed his cavalry.

<sup>23</sup> *ut . . . collocāverat*: as . . . *they had been stationed*; i. e., Vercingetorix did not lead his infantry back into the camp but made for Alesia directly from their battle formation. He had sent only his cavalry against Caesar; the infantry had been drawn up in readiness outside his camp

secūtus hostēs quantum diēi tempus est passum, circiter tribus  
 185 mīlibus hostium ex novissimō agmine interfectīs, alterō diē<sup>24</sup> ad  
 Alesiam castra fēcit.

“The enemy were cowed by the defeat of their cavalry, the arm in which they had the greatest confidence; accordingly, after reconnoitring the position, he called upon the soldiers to brace themselves for an effort and proceeded to form a contravallation.

“The fortress stood on the top of a hill, in a very commanding position, being apparently impregnable except by blockade. The base of the hill was washed on two sides by two streams. In front of the town extended a plain about three miles in length; and on every other side it was surrounded, at a moderate distance, by hills of elevation equal to its own. Below the wall, on the side of the hill which looked towards the east, the whole space was crowded with the Gallic troops, who had fortified it with a ditch and a wall of loose stones, six feet high. The perimeter of the works which the Romans were about to construct covered eleven miles. Camps were established in convenient positions; and in their neighborhood twenty-three redoubts were constructed, in which piquets were posted during the day, to prevent any sudden sortie, while at night they were guarded by strong bivouacs.”<sup>25</sup>

#### CALVARY SKIRMISHES

Opere institūtō, fit equestre proelium in eā plānitīē quam intermissam collibus<sup>26</sup> tria milia passuum in longitūdinem patēre

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

quantum, adv., *as much as*.

longitūdō, longitūdinis, *length, extent, long duration* (cf. longitude).

<sup>24</sup> alterō diē: *on the next day*.

<sup>25</sup> Caesar's *Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes, pp. 259-260.

<sup>26</sup> intermissam collibus: *unbroken by hills*.

suprā dēmōnstrāvīmus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs auxiliō Caesar Germānōs mittit. Legiōnēs prō 190  
castrīs cōstituit, nē qua subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fiat.  
Praesidiō legiōnum additō, nostrīs animus augētur. Hostēs in  
fugam conjectī, sē ipsī multitudine impediunt atque angustiōribus  
portīs relictīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius usque ad mūnitiōnēs  
sequuntur. Fit magna caedēs. Nōnnūllī, relictīs equīs, fossam 195  
trānsire et māceriam trāscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs  
Caesar quās prō vallō cōstituerat prōmovērī jubet. Nōn minus  
Gallī quī intrā mūnitiōnēs erant perturbantur. Venirī ad sē cōn-  
festim existimantēs, ad arma conclāmant. Nōnnūllī perterritī in  
oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorīx jubet portās claudī, nē castra 200  
nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs, Germānī  
sēsē recipiunt.

#### VERCINGETORIX ISSUES A UNIVERSAL CALL TO ARMS

Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnitiōnēs ab Rōmānīs perficiantur,  
cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum noctū dimittere. Discē-  
dentibus mandat, ut suam quisque eōrum civitātem adeat omnēs- 205  
que quī per aetātem arma ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in  
illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque ut suae salutis ratiōnem  
habeant, neu sē optimē dē commūnī libertāte meritum hostibus in  
cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indiligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

irruptiō, irruptiōnis, a *breaking into, attack.*

coartō, 1, tr., *crowd together.*

māceria, ae, *wall.*

trāscendō, trāscendere, trāscendī, trāscēnsus, 3, tr. and intr., *climb over, board.*

obtestor, 1, tr., *call to witness, beseech, entreat.*

mereor, 2, tr., *deserve, merit.*

indiligēns, (gen. indiligentis), *negligent, lax (in, not + diligēns).*

- 210 octōgintā<sup>27</sup> ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā, frūmentum sē exiguē diērum trīgintā habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse parcendō. His datīs mandātīs, quā nostrum opus erat intermissum,<sup>28</sup> secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmīttit. Frūmentum omne ad sē referri iubet. Capitis poenam<sup>29</sup> eīs quī
- 215 nōn pāruerint cōstituit. Pecus, cūjus magna erat cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsā, virītim distribuit. Frūmentum parcē et paulātīm mētīrī instituit. Cōpiās omnēs quās prō oppidō collocāverat in

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

octōgintā, indecl. numeral, *eighty*.

intereō, interīre, interīi, interitum, irreg., intr., *perish, die* (inter, among + eō, go; cf. interficiō, kill).

tolerō, 1, tr., *endure, hold out* (cf. tolerate, toleration).

poena, ae, *punishment, penalty*.

pecus, pecoris, n., *cattle, a herd*.

compellō, compellere, compulī, compulsus, 3, tr., *drive together, collect, force* (com, together + pellō, drive).

virītim, adv., *to each one, individually* (cf. vir).

parcē, adv., *frugally, sparingly*.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, 4, tr., *measure out, distribute*.

<sup>27</sup> This is Caesar's estimate of Vercingetorix's forces without the cavalry. Caesar himself had about 50,000 men.

<sup>28</sup> quā . . . intermissum; the Romans had not yet finished the siegework which they were constructing. Caesar surrounded the hill on which Alesia was situated with a series of fortifications that were the counterpart of the mine fields, barbed wire, and guard towers that mark so many frontiers of the present day, especially in eastern Europe. His enemies had as much difficulty in piercing these defenses as refugees have in crossing fortified frontiers. For the location of Alesia and the territory controlled by the Mandubii consult the map on page 202.

In addition to the inner trench that circled the town, the Romans constructed an outer line to protect their forces from the Gallic army of relief that was approaching from the outside (lines 220-224). Vercingetorix had also surrounded the town with earthworks (page 240). The remains of works built by the two leaders at Alesia have been excavated by French archeologists.

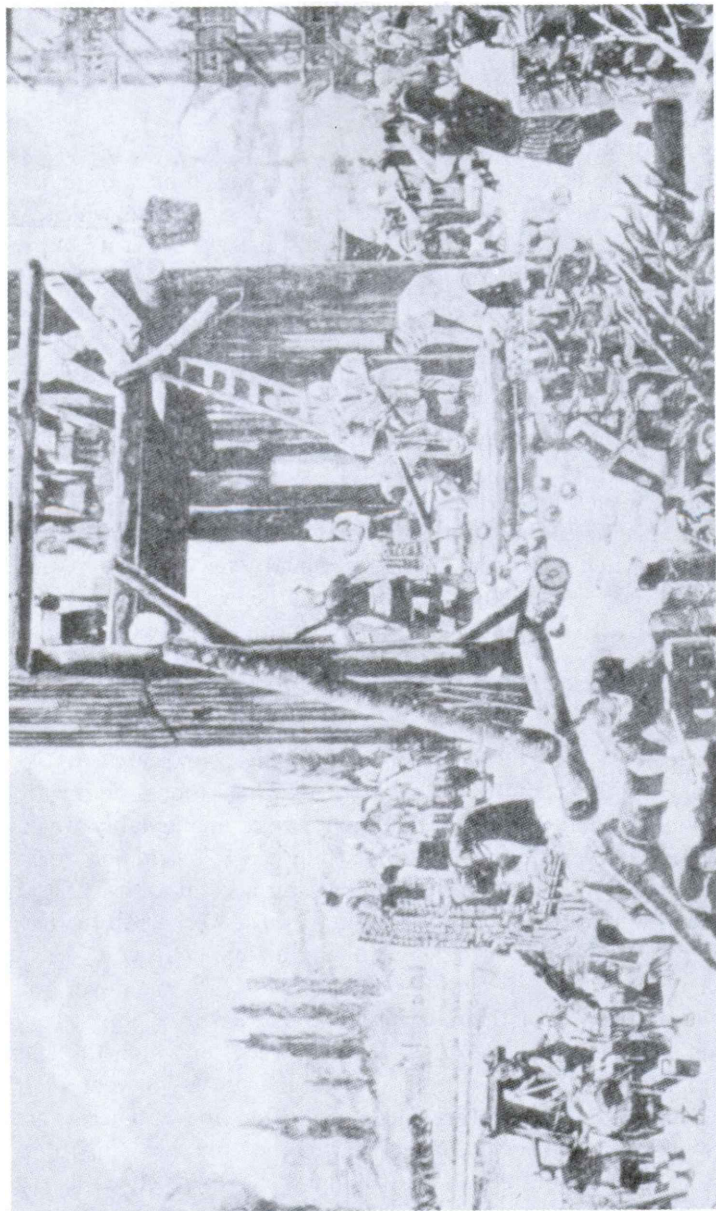
<sup>29</sup> Capitis poenam: *death penalty*; cf. capitis periculō, page 170, line 6.

oppidum recipit. His ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum parat administrāre.

“Being informed of what had passed by deserters and prisoners, Caesar planned defensive works of the following kind. Constructing a trench twenty feet wide with vertical sides, the width at the bottom being exactly equal to the distance between its upper edges, he traced out all the remaining works eight hundred paces behind it, his object being, as he was obliged to cover such a vast extent of ground and it was not easy to man the whole system of works with an unbroken ring of troops, to prevent the enemy from swooping down unexpectedly upon the lines in force at night, or in the day-time discharging missiles at the men while they were at work. Leaving this interval, he dug two trenches of equal depth, each fifteen feet wide, and filled the inner one, where it crossed the plain and the low ground, with water drawn from the stream. Behind the trenches he constructed a rampart and palisade twelve feet high, which he strengthened by an embattled breastwork, with large forked branches projecting along the line where the breastwork joined the rampart, to check the ascent of the enemy; and erected towers on the entire circuit of the works at intervals of eighty feet.

“While these vast fortifications were being constructed, it was necessary to fetch timber and corn; and the troops, having to move considerable distances from camp, were unavoidably weakened. Sometimes, indeed, the Gauls attempted to storm our works and made furious sallies from the town by several gates. Caesar therefore thought it necessary to strengthen the works still further, in order to render the lines defensible by a smaller force.

“Accordingly trees or very stout branches were cut down and their ends stripped of their bark and sharpened to a point; continuous trenches were then dug, five feet deep, in which the logs were planted and fastened down at the bottom to prevent their being dragged out, while the boughs projected above. There were five rows in each trench, connected with one another and interlaced; and all who stepped in would impale themselves on the



—Philip Gendreau

THE ROMANS CONSTRUCT ELABORATE DEFENSE WORKS BEFORE ALESIA

sharp stakes. The men called them 'grave-stones.' In front of them, arranged in slanting rows in the form of a quincunx, pits were dug, three feet deep, which tapered gradually towards the bottom. Smooth logs, as thick as a man's thigh, sharpened at the top and hardened by fire, were planted in them, projecting not more than four fingers above the ground. At the same time the earth was trampled down to the depth of one foot above the bottom, to keep them firmly in position; while the rest of the pit was covered with twigs and brushwood to hide the trap. There were eight rows of this kind, three feet apart. The men called them lilies, from their resemblance to that flower. In front of them blocks of wood a foot long, with barbed iron spikes let into them, were completely buried in the earth and scattered about in all directions at moderate intervals. The men called them 'spurs.'<sup>30</sup>

HE CONSTRUCTS DEFENSE WORKS BEHIND HIS OWN LINES  
TO MEET THE RELIEVING FORCE

Hīs rēbus perfectīs, regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās 220  
prō locī nātūrā, quattuordecim milia passuum complexus, parēs  
ējusdem generis mūnitiōnēs, dīversās ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem  
hostem perfēcit, ut nē magnā quidem multitudīne mūnitiōnum  
praesidia circumvenīrī possent; nē autem cum periculō ex castrīs

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

quattuordecim, indecl. numeral, *fourteen*.  
complector, complectī, complexus sum, 3, tr., *embrace, enclose*.  
pār (*gen. paris*), *equal, like*.  
dīversus, a, um, *in opposite directions, diverse, different*.  
exterior, exterius, *exterior, outer*.  
nē . . . quidem, adv., *not even*.

---

<sup>30</sup> *Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War*, tr. by T. Rice Holmes, pp. 262-264.

225 *ēgredi cōgātur, diērum trīgintā pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum jubet.*

#### THE GAULS OUTSIDE HOLD A COUNCIL OF WAR

Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī, conciliō prīncipum convocātō, nōn omnēs eōs quī arma ferre possent cōgendōs statuunt, sed certum numerum<sup>31</sup> cuique civitātī imperandum, nē tantā multitudīne cōfūsā, nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec rem frūmentāriam administrāre possent. Ex hīs quibus militēs imperatī  
 230 erant, Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine cum Rōmānis bellum gestūrōs dicerent;<sup>32</sup> rogātī tamen ab Commiō, prō ējus hospitio duo mīlia mīsērunt. Hūjus operā  
 235 Commiī, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēli atque ūtili superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britannīā Caesar prō quibus meritīs civitātem ējus<sup>33</sup> immūnem esse jusserat, jūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

*ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, 3, intr., go out, march out, make a sortie.*  
*convehō, convehere, convexī, convectus, 3, tr., bring together, collect.*  
*statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtus, 3, tr., set up, place, determine (cf. statutes).*  
*cōfundō, cōfundere, cōfūdī, cōfūsus, 3, tr., pour together, bring together.*  
*moderor, 1, tr., manage, control (cf. moderator).*  
*discernō, discernere, discrēvī, discrētus, 3, tr., separate, keep apart.*  
*Commius, ī, Commius, a chief of the Atrebrates.*  
*hospitium, ī, friendship, hospitality.*  
*opera, ae, work, exertion, service.*  
*fidēlis, e, faithful, trustworthy, reliable.*  
*immūnis, e, unburdened, free (from a public service), tax-free.*  
*reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditus, 3, tr., give back, return, restore.*

<sup>31</sup> The total levy was 259,000 men to be raised by forty-two states. The confederacy included all the important states of Gaul except the Aquitanians, the Remi, the Lingones, and the Treveri.

<sup>32</sup> Even yet the full cooperation of all Gaul was not achieved. The Bellovaci were willing to fight Caesar but not under the command of Vercingetorix.

<sup>33</sup> civitātem ējus; the Atrebrates.

Morinōs attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit libertātis vindicandae et pristinae bellī glōriae recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoriā movērentur, omnēs- 240 que et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent.

### THE GREAT ARMY GATHERS

Coāctis equitum octō milibus et peditum circiter ducentis quīnquāgintā, haec in Haeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur, numerus- que inībātur. Praefectī cōstituēbantur. Omnēs alacrēs et fidūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam 245 quī aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustinēri posse arbitrārētur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pugnārētur, forīs tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

### A DESPERATE COUNCIL WITHIN ALESIA

(Meanwhile the Gauls within Alesia were living in hope. Cut off by the besieging legions, they heard no word of the rallying of the Gallic forces. Day by day their provisions grew less. Day by day, as they scanned the plains and hills for the first sight of camp fires or Gallic horsemen, hope faded. Thus thirty days passed, with the siege unbroken and no relief force in sight. Let us turn now to the desperate men within the beleaguered city.)

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**Morini, Morinōrum, the Morini** (mōr'ī nī).

**cōnsēnsiō, cōnsēnsiōnis, agreement** (cf. cōnsentiō, cōnsēnsus).

**vindicō, 1, tr., claim, set free, deliver, inflict punishment** (cf. vindictive).

**incumbō, incumbere, incubui, incubitum, 3, intr.; w. dat., recline upon, devote one's self to.**

**octō, indecl. numeral, eight.**

**ducentī, ae, a, two hundred.**

**recēnsēō, recēnsēre, recēnsui, recēnsus, 2, tr., inspect, review.**

**alacer, alacris, alacre, lively, eager, ready** (cf. alacrity).

**anceps (gen. ancipitis), with two sides, double.**

**forīs, adv., out of doors, without.**

At eī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē<sup>34</sup> quā auxilia su-  
 250 ōrum exspectāverant, cōsūptō omnī frūmentō, īnciī quid in  
 Haeduīs gererētur conciliō coactō dē exitū suārum fortūnārum  
 dēliberābant. Ac variīs dictis sententiīs, quārum pars dēditionem,  
 pars, dum vīrēs suppetere, ēruptionem cēnsēbat, nōn prae-  
 tereunda ōrātiō Critognātī vidētur propter ējus singulārem et  
 255 nefāriam crūdēlitātem. Hic summō in Arvernīs nātus locō et  
 magnae habitus auctōritātis, “Nihil,” inquit, “dē eōrum sen-  
 tentiā dictūrus sum<sup>35</sup> quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditionis nō-  
 mine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad con-  
 cilium adhibendōs cēnsēō. Cum hīs mihi rēs sit<sup>36</sup> quī ēruptionem  
 260 probant; quōrum in cōsiliō, omnium vestrum cōsēnsū, pristinae  
 residere virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, nōn  
 virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ultrō mortī

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

praeterō, praeterire, praeteriī, praeteritus, irreg., tr. and intr., *go beyond, pass by, omit.*

īnciūs, a, um, *not knowing, ignorant, not aware* (cf. sciō; science).

variūs, a, um, *diverse, changing, various.*

Critognātus, ī, *Critognatus*, a chief of the Arverni.

crūdēlitās, crūdēlitātis, *cruelty, harshness.*

adhibeō, 2, tr., *bring to, bring in, summon, employ, use.*

resideō, residere, resēdī, 2, intr., *sit back, remain.*

iste, ista, istud, *that, this.*

mollitia, ae, *weakness.*

paulisper, adv., *for a short time, for a little while.*

ultrō, adv., *of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provoca-  
 tion, besides, moreover.*

<sup>34</sup> Vercingetorix had told the departing cavalry that he had supplies for about thirty days.

<sup>35</sup> dictūrus sum: *I am (not) going to speak*; the future participle is used with the verb sum to express action about to be done.

<sup>36</sup> sit: *let . . . be.*

offerant, facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem<sup>37</sup>—tantum apud mē dignitās<sup>38</sup> potest—sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae jactūram fierī 265 vidērem;<sup>37</sup> sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid, hominum milibus octōgintā ūnō locō interfectīs, propinquīs cōsanguineīsque<sup>39</sup> nostrīs animī<sup>40</sup> fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō spoliāre, quī 270 vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā ac temeritatē vestrā aut animī imbēcillitatē omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subjicere. An<sup>41</sup> quod ad diem nōn vēnērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō?

---

 WORDS TO REMEMBER

**offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus, irreg., tr., bring before, present, offer, confer upon** (cf. oblation).

**patienter, adv., patiently** (cf. *patior, patiēns*).

**praeterquam, adv., besides, except.**

**jactūra, ae, loss, sacrifice.**

**cōsanguineus, a, um, of the same blood.**

**cadāver, cadāveris, a dead body, corpse** (cf. *cadaverous*).

**dēcertō, 1, intr., fight to the end, struggle fiercely, vie, contend.**

**stultitia, ae, foolishness, folly.**

**imbēcillitās, imbēcillitātis, weakness** (cf. *imbecile*).

**prōsternō, prōsternere, prōstrāvī, prōstrātus, 3, tr., prostrate, destroy.**

**subjiciō, subjicere, subjēcī, subjectus, 3, tr., throw under, make subject, subject.**

**cōstantia, ae, firmness, steadfastness** (cf. *constancy*).

**ergō, adv., therefore, then.**

---

<sup>37</sup> **probārem . . . sī . . . vidērem: would approve . . . if I saw; Gr. 583.**

<sup>38</sup> **dignitās; the authority of those who advocate it.**

<sup>39</sup> **propinquīs cōsanguineīsque; dative of possession, Gr. 725.**

<sup>40</sup> **animī; partitive genitive with Quid; lit., what of courage; Gr. 686-687.**

<sup>41</sup> **An, or; Gr. 508.**

275 Rōmānōs in illis ulteriōribus mūnitiōnibus animīne causā<sup>42</sup> cotīdiē exercēri putātis? Sī illōrum<sup>43</sup> nuntiīs cōfirmārī nōn potestis, omnī aditū praesaeptō, hīs ūtiminī testibus appropinquāre eōrum adventum: cūjus rei timōre perterritī, diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō meī cōsiliī est?<sup>44</sup> Facere quod nostrī mājōres  
 285 nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque<sup>45</sup> fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī ac simili inopiā coāctī, eōrum corporibus quī aetate ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur vītam tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cūjus rei sī exemplum nōn habērēmus tamen libertātis causā institui et posteris prōdī pulcherrimum  
 285 jūdicārem.<sup>46</sup> Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Vastātā Galliā, Cimbrī, magnāque illātā calamitāte, finibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; jūra, lēgēs, agrōs, libertātem nōbīs reliquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt nisi, invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēque

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

exerceō, 2, tr., *practice, train, exercise.*

praesaepiō, praesaepire, praesaepsi, praesaeptus, 4, tr., *hedge, block up.*

nēquāquam, adv., *in no way, by no means, not at all.*

Cimbrī, Cimbrōrum, *the Cimbri* (sīm'brī).

Teutonēs, Teutonum, *the Teutones* (tū'tō nēz).

exemplum, ī, *example, precedent.*

posterī, posterōrum, *descendants, posterity.*

prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī, prōditus, 3, tr., *hand down, betray.*

invidia, ae, *envy, hatred* (cf. invidious).

potēns (*gen. potentis*), *powerful, influential* (cf. potentate).

<sup>42</sup> animīne causā: *to amuse themselves.*

<sup>43</sup> illōrum; i. e., the Gauls outside.

<sup>44</sup> Quid ergō meī cōsiliī est: *What then is (belongs to) my advice?*

<sup>45</sup> The Cimbri and Teutones, barbarians from beyond the Rhine, invaded and devastated Gaul 113-101 B. C. They were destroyed by Roman armies 102-101 B. C.

<sup>46</sup> sī . . . nōn habērēmus . . . jūdicārem: *if we did not have . . . I would judge.*

bellō cognōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōsidere atque 290  
hīs aeternam injungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā con-  
diciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquis nātiōnibus  
geruntur ignōrātis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in prōvin-  
ciam redācta, jūre et lēgibus commūtātis, secūribus<sup>47</sup> subjecta,  
perpetuā premitur servitūte.” 295

#### THE DECISION OF THE COUNCIL

Sententiīs dictīs, cōstituunt ut eī quī valētūdine aut aetāte  
inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur  
quam ad Critognātī sententiam dēscendant; illō tamen potius  
ūtendum cōsiliō, sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut  
dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs 300  
oppidō recēperant, cum liberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī,  
cum ad mūnitiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus  
precibus ōrābant ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō adjuvārent. At  
Caesar, dispositīs in vallō custōdibus, recipī prohibēbat.

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

aeternus, a, um, *eternal, everlasting.*

injungō, injungere, injūnxī, injūctus, 3, tr., *join to, impose.*

umquam, adv., *at any time, ever.*

ignōrō, 1, tr., *not know, am ignorant of, fail to observe, overlook.*

secūris, secūris, *axe.*

valētūdō, valētūdinis, *health.*

experior, experīrī, expertus sum, 4, tr., *prove, try, test (cf. experience).*

subeō, subīre, subīrī, subitus, irreg., tr., *go under, come up to, undergo, endure.*

uxor, uxōris, *wife.*

cibus, ī, *food.*

---

<sup>47</sup> The axes carried by the lictors who accompanied Roman magistrates, symbols therefore of Roman authority.

## THE RELIEVING FORCE ARRIVES

305 Intereā Commius reliquique ducēs quibus summa imperii permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt et, colle exteriōre occupātō, nōn longius mille passibus ā nostrīs mūnitiōnibus cōnsidunt.

## THE GAULS ATTACK FROM BOTH SIDES

Posterō diē, equitātū ex castrīs ēductō, omnem eam plānitiem,  
 310 quam in longitūdinem tria milia passuum patēre dēmōstrāvimus, complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abductās in locīs superiōribus cōstituunt. Erat ex Alesiā dēspectus in plānitiem. Concurrunt, hīs auxiliīs vīsīs. Fit grātulātiō inter eōs, atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque, prōductīs  
 315 cōpiīs, ante oppidum cōsistunt et proximam fossam crātibus atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant. Caesar, omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnitiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat,<sup>48</sup> suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī jubet.  
 320 Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique jugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs militēs intentī pugnae ēventum expectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expeditōsque levis armā-

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

summa, ae, *the main point, sum total, the whole, control* (cf. sum, summary).  
 permittō, *permittere, permīsi, permissus*, 3, tr., *give over, entrust, permit*.  
 abdūcō, *abdūcere, abdūxī, abductus*, 3, tr., *lead away, draw off, withdraw*.  
 dēspectus, ūs, *a looking down, view*.  
 grātulātiō, *grātulātiōnis, congratulation, rejoicing*.  
 nōscō, *nōscere, nōvī, nōtus*, 3, tr., *become acquainted with; in perfect, know*.  
 intentus, a, um, *intent on, attentive*.  
 rārūs, a, um, *few*.

<sup>48</sup> sī ūsus veniat: *if need should arise*. The men were assigned to regular battle stations.

tūrae interjēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs complūrēs dē improvīsō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Galli cōnfīderent, et nostrōs multitudīne premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et eī quī mūnitiōnibus continēbantur et eī quī ad auxilium convēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōfirmābant. Quod in cōspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē ac turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et glōriae cupiditās et timor ignōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsū dubiā victōriā pugnārētur, Germānī unā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs, sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs usque ad castra īsecūtī, suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At eī quī Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī, prope victōriā dēspērātā, sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

“After one day’s interval, in the course of which they made a great number of hurdles, ladders, and grappling-hooks, the Gauls

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**interjiciō, interjicere, interjēcī, interjectus**, 3, tr., *throw between, put between, place between* (cf. interjection).

**succurrō, succurrere, succurrī, succursum**, 3, intr.; w. dat., *run to help, aid, assist* (cf. succor).

**rēctē**, adv., *properly, rightly*.

**cēlō**, 1, tr., *keep covered, secrete, conceal*.

**ignōminia, ae, disgrace, dishonor** (cf. ignominy).

**merīdiēs, meridiēi**, *midday, noon, the south*.

**turma, ae, troop, squadron** (of about 30 cavalymen).

**prōpellō, prōpellere, prōpulī, prōpulsus**, 3, tr., *drive forward, rout, dislodge, drive back* (cf. propeller).

**item**, adv., *in like manner, also, just so*.

**colligō, colligere, collēgī, collēctus**, 3, tr., *bring together, obtain*; w. reflexive pronoun, *recover, rally* (cf. collection).

**maestus, a, um, dejected, sad**.

left camp silently at midnight and approached the entrenchments in the plain. Raising a sudden shout, to signify their coming to the besieged inside the town, they began to fling down the hurdles, to dislodge our men from the rampart with slings, arrows, and stones, and to carry out everything else proper to an assault. At the same moment, hearing the shout, Vercingetorix gave his troops the signal by trumpet, and led them out of the town. Our troops, as on previous days, moved each to his appointed station in the entrenchments; with slings, one-pounders, stakes set ready inside the works, and bullets, they beat off the Gauls. As the darkness made it impossible to see far, many wounds were received on both sides. A number of missiles were discharged by the artillery. Then Marcus Antonius and Gaius Trebonius, the lieutenant-generals to whom the defence of these sections had been allotted, withdrew troops from forts farther away, and sent them up to bring assistance wherever they remarked that our men were hard pressed.

“While the Gauls were some distance from the entrenchment they had more advantage from the quantity of their missiles; then, when they came up closer, they were soon caught unawares on the ‘spurs,’ or they sank into pits and were impaled, or they were shot by artillery pikes from the rampart and the turrets, and so perished on every side. Many a man was wounded, but the entrenchment was nowhere penetrated; and when daybreak drew nigh, fearing that they might be surrounded on their exposed flank by a sortie from the camps above them, they retired to their comrades. Meanwhile the inner force brought out the appliances which had been prepared by Vercingetorix for a sortie, and filled in the nearer trenches; but they lingered too long in the execution of the business, and, or ever they could get near the entrenchments, they learnt that their countrymen had withdrawn. So without success they returned to the town.”<sup>49</sup>

---

<sup>49</sup> *The Gallic War*, tr. by H. J. Edwards, pp. 499, 501.

THE LEADERS OF THE RELIEVING FORCE  
AGAIN DELIBERATE

Bis magnō cum detrīmentō repulsī, Gallī quid agant cōsulunt. Locōrum perītōs adhibent. Ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs 340 mūnitiōnēsque cognōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitūs opere complectī nōn potuerant nostrī, necessariōque paene inīquō locō castra fēcerant. Haec Gājus Antistius Rēginus et Gājus Canīnius Rebilus, lēgātī, cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. 345

A STRATAGEM

Cognitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus, ducēs hostium sexāgintā milia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum civitātum quae maximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid agī placeat occultē inter sē cōstituunt; adeundī tempus cōstituunt cum merīdiēs esse vi- 350 deātur.<sup>50</sup> Hīs copiīs Vercassivellaunum, Arvernum, ūnum ex quat- tuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille, ex castrīs primā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōfectō sub lūcem<sup>51</sup> itinere, post montem sē occultāvit militēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum jam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea

---

WORDS TO REMEMBER

**bis**, numerical adv., *twice*.

**perītus**, a, um; w. gen., *experienced, skilled, familiar with*.

**septentriōnēs**, septentriōnum, *the stars of the Great Bear; hence, the north*.

**circuitus**, ūs, *a going around, circumference, circuit* (cf. circuitous).

**Gājus (ī) Antistius (ī) Rēginus (ī)**, *Gaius Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**Gājus (ī) Canīnius (ī) Rebilus (ī)**, *Gaius Caninius Rebilus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

**Vercassivellaunus, ī**, *Vercassivellaunus* (vēr kās sī vēl lō'nūs).

---

<sup>50</sup> **videātur**; subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, Gr. 675.

<sup>51</sup> **sub lūcem**: *towards daybreak*.

355 castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, contendit; eōdemque tempore  
 equitātus ad campestrēs mūnitiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō  
 castris sēsē ostendere coepērunt. Vercingetorix, ex arce Alesiae suōs  
 cōnspicātus, ex oppidō ēgreditur; ā castris longuriōs, falcēs reli-  
 quaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pugnātur ūnō  
 360 tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur. Quae minimē  
 vīsa pars fīrma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantis  
 mūnitiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Mul-  
 tum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum<sup>52</sup> pug-  
 nantibus exsistit, quod suum pericūlum in aliēnā vident virtūte  
 365 cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius homi-  
 num mentēs perturbant. Caesar, idōneum locum nactus, quid  
 quāque in parte gerātur cognōscit; labōrantibus auxilium mittit.

#### THE SUPREME MOMENT

Utrisque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus, quō  
 maximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnitiōnēs,  
 370 dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, finem  
 labōrum omnium expectant. Maximē ad superiōrēs mūnitiōnēs  
 labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Ini-

---

#### WORDS TO REMEMBER

**campester, campestris, campestre, level, flat.**

**arx, arcis, citadel, fortress.**

**longurius, ī, a long pole.**

**falx, falcis, hook (for pulling down walls).**

**prōferō, prōferre, prōtulī, prōlātus, irreg., tr., bring forth, bring out, produce.**

**occurrō, occurrere, occurrī, occursum, 3, intr.; w. dat., run in the way of, meet, happen upon, come to, oppose, occur.**

**convenit, convenīre, convēnit, 4, intr., it is convenient, it is necessary, it is suitable.**

**perfringō, perfringere, perfrēgī, perfrāctus, 3, tr., break through, burst through.**

---

<sup>52</sup> The Romans were fighting, back to back, on two fronts.

quum loci ad dēclivitatē fastigium<sup>53</sup> magnum habet mōmentum. Alii tēla conjiciunt, alii testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatigātis in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversis in mūnitiōnem con- 375 jectus et ascēsum dat Gallis et ea quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī contegit; nec jam arma nostris nec virēs suppetunt. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductis cohortibus ēruptiōne pugnent; id, nisi necessariō, nē faciat. Ipse 380 adit reliquōs, cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmiciātiōnum fructum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōsistere. Interiōrēs,<sup>54</sup> dēspērātis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem mūnitiōnum, loca praeupta ascēnsū temptant; hūc ea quae parāverant, cōferunt. Multitudinē tēlorum ex turribus prōpug- 385 nantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vallum ac lōricam rescindunt. Mittit primum Brūtum adulēscēntem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis Gājum Fabium, lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pugnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. 390

---

 WORDS TO REMEMBER

dēclivitās, dēclivitātis, *descent*.

fastigium, ī, *elevation, height, descent*.

mōmentum, ī, *weight, influence, importance*.

in vicem: *in turn*.

contegō, contegere, contēxi, contēctus, 3, tr., *cover up*.

succumbō, succumbere, succubui, succubitus, 3, intr.; w. dat., *sink under, yield*.

dīmiciātiō, dīmiciātiōnis, *fight, contest*.

interior, interius, *interior, inner*.

praeuptus, a, um, *steep, abrupt*.

prōpugnō, 1, intr., *fight for, defend, rush out to fight, attack*.

dēturbō, 1, tr., *drive off, dislodge*.

lōrica, ae, *breastwork*.

---

<sup>53</sup> ad dēclivitatē fastigium: *slope downwards, downward slope*.

<sup>54</sup> Interiōrēs; i. e., the Gauls within.

## CAESAR ENTERS THE FIGHT

Restitutō proeliō ac repulsis hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum mīserat contendit. Cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēducit. Equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnitiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adoriri jubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque  
 395 aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctis ūndecim cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fors obtulit, Caesarem per nuntiōs facit certiōrem, quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit. Ējus adventū ex colōre vestītūs<sup>55</sup> cognitō, quō insignī in proeliis ūtī cōsuērat,  
 400 turmīsque equitum et cohortibus visīs quās sē sequī jusserat, hostēs proelium committunt.<sup>56</sup>

Utrimque clāmōre sublātō, excipit<sup>57</sup> rūrsus ex vallō atque omnibus mūnitiōnibus clāmōr. Nostrī, omissis pīlis,<sup>58</sup> gladiīs rem gerunt. Repentē post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae  
 405 appropinquant.

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**restituō, restituere, restitui, restitutus**, 3, tr., *set up again, rebuild, renew* (cf. restitution).

**circumeō, circumīre, circumī, circumitus, irreg., tr.**, *go around, march around, traverse*.

**ūndecim**, indecl. numeral, *eleven*.

**fors, fortis**, *chance*.

**accelerō**, 1, intr., *hasten*.

**color, colōris**, *color*.

**vestītus, ūs**, *clothing* (cf. vesture, vestment).

**omittō, omittēre, omīsi, omissus**, 3, tr., *let fall, give up, neglect* (cf. omission).

**repentē**, adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly*.

<sup>55</sup> Caesar was wearing the red military cloak of a commander in chief.

<sup>56</sup> They were fighting on lower ground, a sort of natural stage to the rest of the armies.

<sup>57</sup> **excipit**: *was taken up*.

<sup>58</sup> The action was too close for the opening shower of pīla; the legionaries went to work at once with the short sword.

## A ROMAN VICTORY

Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit magna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et prīnceps Lemovicum, occīditur; Vercasivellaunus, Arvernus, vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; signa militāria quattuor et septuāgintā ad Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnitiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus, hāc rē auditā, ex castrīs<sup>59</sup> Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs ac tōtius diēi labōre militēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiaē interficī potuissent.<sup>60</sup> Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus novissimum agmen cōsequitur. Magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

## THE SURRENDER OF VERGINGETORIX

Posterō diē Vercingetorīx, conciliō convocātō, id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed commūnis libertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et, quoniam sit fortunāe cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illis offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere, seu vīvum trādere velint.

## WORDS TO REMEMBER

**Sedulius, ī, *Sedulius***, a chief of the Lemovices.  
**Lemovicēs, Lemovicum, *the Lemovices*** (lēm ó ví'sēz).  
**vīvus, a, um, *alive, living*** (cf. vivid, vivacious).  
**septuāgintā, indecl. numeral, *seventy***.  
**prōtinus, adv., *continuously, forthwith, immediately***.  
**necessitās, necessitātis, *necessity, constraint, need***.  
**satisfaciō, satisfacere, satisfēcī, satisfactum, 3, intr.; w. dat., *do enough for, give satisfaction, satisfy, make amends***.

<sup>59</sup> castrīs; i. e., the camp of the Gallic relieving force.

<sup>60</sup> essent dēfessī . . . potuissent: *had been exhausted . . . could have been*: Gr. 675.



#### THE SURRENDER OF VERCINGETORIX

Still noble in defeat, Vercingetorix surrenders himself to Rome and her executioners to win peace and some measure of mercy for his beaten compatriots.

Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Jubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnitiōne prō castrīs cōnsēdit. Eō  
 425 ducēs prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorix dēditur; arma prōjiciuntur. Reservātis Haeduīs atque Arvernīs,<sup>61</sup> sī per eōs cīvitatēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvis tōtī exercitūi capita singula<sup>62</sup> praedae nōmine distribuit.

Hīs rēbus cōfectīs, in Haeduōs proficiscitur; cīvitatē recipit.  
 430 Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī, quae imperāverit sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hiberna mittit. Captīvōrum circiter vīginti milia Haeduīs Arvenisque reddit. Titum Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitatū in Sēquanōs proficiscī jubet, reliquāsque legiōnēs in diversīs locis  
 435 collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōstituit.

<sup>61</sup> The Haedui and the Arverni were the leading tribes of Gaul. By returning their prisoners (instead of distributing or selling them as slaves) Caesar hoped to win them over and so, once more, divide the Gauls.

<sup>62</sup> Each Roman soldier received a slave as part of the spoils. The war in Gaul was very profitable to Caesar as well as to his officers and men.

His rēbus ex Caesaris litteris cognitīs Rōmae diērum vīginti supplicātiō redditur.

## EPILOGUE

This statue of Vercingetorix stands today in Alesia in memory of the Gallic leader who dared all dangers to free his native land. It is said that he languished in a Roman dungeon for six years, and was then brought forth to grace Caesar's triumph. And after this display he was put to death.

And though Caesar took from Gaul the liberty which Vercingetorix had perished in defending, though he had come to Gaul to win an empire for Rome and dictatorship for himself, there were benefits from his conquest which yet remain. For so powerful is that Providence which guides our history that, through the foreign and unjust aggressor, there came to Gaul the legacy of Rome, her architecture, her laws and language, her disciplined order, the seeds of a culture which, nourished by a coming Christianity, was to grow into the France of the future, the intellectual center of Christendom.



VERCINGETORIX—FIRST FRENCH  
HERO OF LIBERTY

## WORD TO REMEMBER

supplicātiō, supplicātiōnis, *public prayer* (to the gods in thanksgiving for successes); hence, *thanksgiving*.

## 10. THE CIVIL WAR

The defeat of the great coalition under Vercingetorix and the capture of Alesia left Caesar undisputed master of Gaul. A few outlying centers of resistance were reduced, and one last stronghold at Uxellodunum was captured. Here Caesar amputated the right hands of the survivors and released them—as a continual reminder to their fellow Gauls of Roman vengeance.

Meanwhile political events were moving rapidly at Rome. In 54 B. C. Crassus had set out to win military glory in Mesopotamia, but in the following year he was killed in battle. Caesar and Pompey were thus left facing one another in a final struggle for mastery. Pompey gradually allied himself with the senatorial party, while the democratic politicians lined up with Caesar. Political disorder grew at Rome; rioting broke out, and even the regular elections had to be suspended because of the turmoil.

All eyes were now turned in expectant dread towards the North. Men knew that the conquest of Gaul had been completed and that Caesar now stood at the frontier of Italy backed by a seasoned and enthusiastically loyal army. Moreover, they knew the ruthless dispatch with which Caesar had conducted his campaign. They knew his determination, his courage, and, above all, his ambition. As men recalled the bloody dictatorships of former generals, of Marius and of Sulla, a mood of fear and suspicion settled upon Rome.

Caesar's second term as governor was to expire in March, 49 B. C. Only in the latter part of that year would he be able to stand for election to another public position. During the interval he would be a private citizen without military command and without official immunity. His enemies planned to crush him during that brief period. But would Caesar relinquish his command? Could he be forced to observe the constitutional regulations?

Caesar, a master of political strategy himself, understood very well the intentions of his enemies, and he was determined not to

deliver himself into their power. Yet he tried hard to maintain his position without civil war. Hence there followed a period of violent political maneuvers, but at last Pompey, with the support of the senatorial party, undertook the defense of Italy and gave orders for a general levy. Caesar was officially declared a public enemy. Civil war was now inevitable, and, on January 11, 49 B. C., Caesar, contrary to the laws of Rome, at the head of his army, crossed the frontier at the river Rubicon.

Cum Caesar exercitum in Italiam dūceret, Pompējus<sup>1</sup> suās cōpiās in Graeciam<sup>2</sup> trānsportāvit. Italiā celeriter captā, Caesar in Hispāniam<sup>3</sup> profectus, lēgātōs Pompējī quī illās regiōnēs tenēbant proeliō superāvit. Inde in Italiam reversus, magnās cōpiās in Graeciam trānsportāvit ibique diū cum Pompējō proeliis contendit. Tandem, proeliō Pharsālī<sup>4</sup> commissō, Pompējum vicit ējusque mīlitum magnum numerum aut cēpit aut occidit.

Pompey fled to Egypt and was there assassinated. Caesar followed and, settling a civil war, placed Cleopatra on the Egyptian throne. Victorious campaigns in Africa and, once again, in Spain, finally crushed all opposition.

---

<sup>1</sup> Pompējus, ī, *Pompey*.

<sup>2</sup> Graecia, ae, *Greece*.

<sup>3</sup> Hispānia, ae, *Spain*.

<sup>4</sup> Pharsālus, ī, *Pharsalus*, a city in Thessaly.

## 11. DĒ MORTE CAESARIS

Ita Caesar, omnibus inimicis<sup>1</sup> superātis, summum in rē publicā imperium sōlus obtinēbat. Populō Rōmānō bellis et periculis paene cōfectō, pācem in Italiā et in prōvinciis cōfirmābat. Omnia et Rōmae<sup>2</sup> et in prōvinciis dīligentissimē administrābat.

5 Omnia ipse ēgit.

Erant autem multī quī ex hāc rē magnum dolōrem cēpērunt. Alii enim libertātem quam ā mājōribus accēperant memoriā tenēbant atque recipere retinēreque voluērunt. Alii irātī<sup>3</sup> erant quod Caesar praemia sibi nōn dedisset. Aliis magnō dolōrī erat tōtum  
10 imperium esse in ūnō homine. Praetereā Caesarem nōn solum<sup>4</sup> imperium sed etiam rēgis nōmen cupere arbitrātī sunt.

Itaque contrā Caesarem conjūrāvērunt. Prīncipēs erant Brūtus et Cassius. Uterque amīcus Caesaris erat. (Brūtus classī quam in bellō Venetōrum fēcerat ā Caesare praefectus erat.) Caesar in  
15 senātum saepe sine armīs veniēbat. Itaque, diē cōstitutā, conjūrātī<sup>5</sup> in senātum vērunt et adventum Caesaris exspectābant. Ille in viā dē periculō monitus est, nam quīdam<sup>6</sup> amīcus litterās dē eā rē cōscriptās eī in senātum ineuntī dedit. Caesar tamen eās nōn lēgit<sup>7</sup> sed in manū retinēbat. Cum in senātum vērisset,  
20 circumventus ab illis, “Quid cupitis?” inquit. Deinde,<sup>8</sup> cum gladiōs cōspexisset, “Quis mē contrā hōrum vim dēfendet?” Nēmō tamen eī auxiliō vērūt. Eum conjūrātī<sup>5</sup> statim gladiis aggressi sunt. Prīmum Caesar sē fortiter dēfendit. Ubi, autem, Brūtum, amīcum

---

<sup>1</sup> inimicus, ī, *enemy*.

<sup>2</sup> Rōmae; locative case, *at Rome*.

<sup>3</sup> irātus, a, um, *angry*.

<sup>4</sup> nōn solum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but also*.

<sup>5</sup> conjūrātī, conjūrātōrum, *conspirators*.

<sup>6</sup> quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *certain*.

<sup>7</sup> lēgō, legere, lēgī, lectus, 3, tr., *read*.

<sup>8</sup> deinde, *next, thereupon*.

suum, inter inimicōs vīdit, “Et tū,” inquit, “Brūte?” neque jam resistere cōnābātur. <sup>25</sup>

Ita occīsus est Julius Caesar, omnium Rōmānōrum maximus atque fortissimus.

